C 11521+
59909 SL

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION

C 11521+
59909 SL

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION

THE HISTORIE OF TREBIZOND,

In foure Bookes.

By *Tho. Gainsforde* Esquier.

Quest. *Quid dignum tanto feret hic promissor hiatu?*
Resp. *Sic iuuat indulgere fugacibus horis.*

AT LONDON,
Printed for *Tho. Downes* and *Eph. Dawson.*
1616.

HISTORIC OF TREBIZOND.

TO
The Right Honorable Countesse Dowager of DERBIE.

RIGHT HONORABLE,

EXperience maketh Ignorance confesse, that the best composed priuate Letters resemble the passage of a Shippe, leauing no print or impression of her course: and the memorie of such an improuident and vnfortunate Man as my selfe, is like spilt abroad Water, neuer to be gathered vp againe. —— *But doe what Contempt and Greatnesse can: this shall outlast a Tombe, and be more glorious then the proudest Epitaph or Structure: Not that there is any thing in the same, otherwise then a Spiders Cobwebbe, fitter to be swept away with a huswiuely hand: But because your Fame may suruiue thereby, and many ages to come demaund, which* Lady *of* DERBY *excited such commemoration? And then the answere shall bee;* Earle Ferdinandos *Widow*, Countesse

DOWAGER *of* DERBY; *who was thus farre beholding to Nature, that* Loue, Beauty, *and* Comlineſſe, *expoſed her as a worke of her choyceſt Storehouſe: who was ſo farre beholding to* Vertue, *that ſhee vnited many Graces, as you ſee a rich Diamond augmented in his luſture by the workmans skilfulneſſe: who was ſo farre beholding to* Fortune, *that ſhee ſheltred vnder the couert of the greateſt and magnificenſt Prince in the World Q.* Elizabeth; *and ſhee ſo ouermantled her with Fauour, that King* Iames *kept her ſtill glorious vnder the ſame: Who was ſo farre beholding to* Prouidence, *that from a ſecond Husbands Worthineſſe and wiſedome, they went arme in arme to the houſe of Perfection, and made it thriue the better vnder the warme roofe of Aboundance: Who was ſo farre beholding to* Honour, *that ſhee affronted the ſtrictneſſe of Law, and from his Maiſties Warrant kept her greatneſſe ſecure: and who was ſo farre beholding to* Fame, *that ſhee trode vpon the ſwelling Serpent* Enuie, *and rayſed good wiſhes from their hearts, who had formerly pretended cauſe of diſtaſting.*

Therefore I can be no contrary amongſt ſo many iuditious obſeruers, but preſume, that ſo great goodneſſe will not be diuerted by any maligne circumſtances; and aſſure my ſelfe, that your Honour *may looke toward mee with a gracious aſpect, or at leaſt in this triuiall abruptneſſe condiſcend to a charitable endurance of mens imperfections: For Wiſedome, or a thriuing Fortune is not bought in the Market, and I amongſt ſome others may well complaine,* ——Fato prudentia minor.

Your Honours humble Obſeruant,

Th. Gainsforde.

The principall matters and Stories contained in these Bookes.

Lib. 1.

THe Story of the Shepheards of *Nagania*. Page. 4.
Marpesias Caue. 13.
Marpesias Story. 15.
The Shepheards Daughters. 18.
The principall Shepheards. 23.
The story of *Franio*. 47.
Idle men described. 48.
The story of *Rugio* and *Deltona*. 62.

Lib. 2.

The Historie of *Mengrelius* and *Kalucki*. 86.
The History of *Xantippus* and *Encelidon*. 104.
The description of *Delphos*. 116.
The Oracle it selfe, or Propheſie. 124.
How *Gelida* and *Perinthum* saued the Empresse Children. 130.
The story of *Praxus* and *Menedemus*. 144.
The story of *Cleonidas* and *Perinthum*. 151.

Lib. 3.

The triumph at *Deltonas* discouery. 172.
The History of *Artabazes* and *Olmus*. 180.
The setling of a Gouernement in a Kingdome. 183.
The story of *Gestarius*. 193.
The story of *Cleonidas* and *Artabazes*. 201.
Anzitemus marieth *Brizaca*, formerly called *Montanus* and *Deltona*. 208.
The story of *Artabanus* and *Astiages*. 209.
The story of *Medormus* and *Gliranda*. 213.
The Combat betweene *Anzitemus* and *Medormus*. 221.
The story of *Ormisdates* and *Damasloris*. 233.
The story of *Anzitemus* and *Astiages*. 245.

The Contents.

Lib. 4.

Anzitemus his owne Storie. Page. 261.
A King described. 263.
Artabazes Father of *Anzitemus*, slaine by *Cleonidas* the Pirat. 269.
The storie of *Cleonidas* and *Artaxata*. 275.
The description of a Giants naturall Disposition. 277.
The storie of *Sagarenus* and *Artaxata*. 280.
Armenia of *Armenus*. 287.
Roxanas description. 291.
The commendation of Conference. 295.
Anzitemus King of *Armenia*. 300.
The storie of *Trezoboro* the Emperours sonne of *Trebizond*. 303.
Trezoboro returneth to *Trebizond*. 308.
The story of *Kalucki* and *Mullumalla*. 310.
Kalucki Emperour of *Tartary*. 313.
Kalucki challengeth *Trebizond*. 326.
The Battaile betweene *Mengrelius* & *Kalucki*: two brothers. 330.
The story of *Mengrelius* and *Trezoboro*, father and sonne. 339.
Mengrelius slaine by *Anzitemus* and *Trezoboro* Emperour, as in the Prophesie. 345.
The story of *Cleonidas* after the Battaile at Sea with *Anzitemus*. 354.
Cleonidas death. 359.

FINIS.

The first Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.

SO long continued the fight betwixt the valiant *Anzitemus*, and the Arch-pirat *Cleonidas*, that extremitie wondred to be maintained, and the night (as a common decider of Controuersies) hasted for very pittie to determine the furie, not remembring what terrour her haste would adde vnto the furie: whereupon *Anzitemus* enraged to be disappoynted, commaunded to grapple, and the taske imposed, chained their Barkes togeather; the effect whereof, produced the lamentable Stratagems, wherewith Confusion, Slaughter, and Death, terrifieth the beholders: For the fighters with Swords seemde to play in the choyse either to deuide the Body

The Battaile betwixt Anzitemus and Cleonidas at Sea.

from the Head, or seperate the Members from the Body: Such as vsed Pikes, might either wound or kill; such as throw Stones, either braine, or endanger; & such as trusting to their strength durst clooſe, either strangle, or tosse ouerboard: Thus were some throwne into the Sea, some stifled in the Shippes, some slaine outright, some irrecouerably wounded, some thronged to death, some sprauling halfe dead, & some fainting ouerwearied; none escaping one mischiefe or other; and all confounded, because they saw all things confused: the faythlesse hearted trembling before death, as dismayed at their fellowes outcryes: the valiant hoping to liue to reuenge their companions wrongs: At last, Destruction lifted vp her horrible countenaunce, as if shee meant to distract them with this assurance, that neither Pollicie, nor Endeuours could direct to any way of securitie; which when *Anzitemus* (euen betwixt the contraries of Pittie and Rage) apprehended, hee then cryed out: Let all ceasse, and *Cleonidas* and I determine the controuersie.

A desperate action of Cleonidas.

But, whether *Cleonidas* despayring in the succesſe, stomaked the misfortune, or remembring his fault conceited the reuenge; or impatient at the difficultie, forgate the meanes of redresse; or enraging to be ouer-mastered, became absolutely desperate: Hee put in practise more feare and more terrour: with his owne hands like a hired Seruant of mischiefe setting the Ships on fire,

fire, and commaunding the reſt of his partie to heaw them a peeces, or otherwiſe to ſhift for themſelues. This was ſo well liked of the Mariners, and ſo ſoone performed, that you would haue imagined, Confuſion meant to decipher, with what varietie ſhee would entertaine Death: For what with Axes, Hat-chets, Sawes, Dragges, Winches, Croes, Engines, and other Inſtruments; the Shippes were ſplitted, ſpoyled, broken, diſioynted, and all to peeces ſhiuered: beſides, the Fire playing the Tirant, quickly diſſeuered, what before faſtned the maine Beames togeather; herein onely acting the part of a Friende by ſoone ridding out of the paine, and concluding (ſeen we muſt die) to die with reſolution.

Thus were ſuch interdicted with neceſsitie of ſauing them ſelues, who before ſtriued to intercept others: Thus did vncomfortable Cryes condemne the crueltie of Reuenge; which would not be ſatiſfied without ſo ſmall a maſſacre: Thus were pittifull yelles the laſt teſtimonie, how many hundreds exclaymed on the ambition of men: Thus did horrible Curſes ſound out the wicked mindes of ſuch, as neglected the true vſe of a good Conſcience: Thus were all the cauſes of amazement vnited, to ſhew the formidable effectes of Enrage & Deſpight, ſo that the moſt part periſhed, and very few ſummoned vp new hopes to prolong their liues: Yet had *Anzitemus* this fortune, to light on the hinder quarter of his

The Shipwracke of Anzitemus.

euemies Shippes; and if before affrighted with the hideous spectacle hee stood vncapable of any resolution, now reduced with the enforced conditions of life, he bestirred his consideration to inhibit vnkind and vntimely mischaunce: whereupon compelled to leaue the ornaments of his vallour, because he was to make vse of his armes and lightnesse, he quickly stripped himselfe, and as quickly tooke vp his seate on the broken peece, which resembling some Boigh or Sea marke, was no doubt the occasion he was the better marked. For as the vncomfortable Night finished her progresse, the bountie of a sunshining Morning layde open her treasurie, and hee had the choyce of many seuerals; faire Weather, sweete Winde, calme Sea, cleare Ayres and sights of a Fisher-boat, which seemed a Messenger of life, in regard it approched so neere, that he was vnderstood in craning their helpes and they helped, when they vnderstood what he craued: But to strengthen your knowledge in this accident, you must alow of some circumstaunce.

The Storie of the Shepheards of Nagania.

AFter the Earth like a magnificent Bride had apparrelled her selfe in her beautious attyre, the Inhabitants of *Nagania* on the Northren *Caspian* Shore, (betweene whom the melancholy Winter had compelled a discontented seperation) began their solemne Spring feastes, and set forward the heards of Sheepe, Goates, and

and greates Cattell to the Downes, which were in a manner purged by the gentle ebbings & flowings of the Sea; where both one and other seemed to make vse of a pleasing theft, pleasing to the Beastes in finding so good a pray as the sweete Grasse afoorded; pleasing to the Earth, in being ordained an instrument of such relieſe: the effect whereof produced, that Riches without Enuie, Good order without Flatterie, Quietnesse without Imperfection, Peace without Intemperance, Plenty without Inordinatnesse, Encrease without Repining, and all other blessings of the Land, as it were in one league combined them selues: Besides, the Sea disburſed a recompence to their industry, which causeth them to maintaine certaine Boates to fish with, and euery one according to a well applauded custome watched his course: amongst these *Placandus* (whom yeeres & grauitie had much graced) liued with such loue and liking, that whensoeuer his iourney importuned, some one or other attended the worke in hand, and at this instant bare him company in his fishingnight: so that by Art vnited to industrie (the onely enemies of idlenesse) their nets were filled with great store, and their Trunks stored with excellent Fish, the dispatch whereof (as vnwilling to tempt prosperitie with an vnnecessary iourney) concluded a returne, had not a sudden cry directed their pitie to regard what they heard, and that detained them to consider, how they might administer

Placandus fishing night.

reliefe, the rather because a man appeared sitting on a broken piece of a Shippe, neither much dismayed at so great an enemie as death, nor now seeming ouer ielous for so sweete a friend as Life: But such as hee was, did their industry assist, their assistance helpe, their helpe recouer, their recouery welcome to Comfort: now when Comfort came to act her part, like the Sunne, who scorning to be checked with euery slender Vapour, quickly lifteth vp his glorious head: Feare and paleneſſe was made ashamed of their wrong disseisure, and he seemed the very Sonne of Valoure, and darling of loue.

This at the first, rayſed a kind of reuerence, wherein they would more orderly haue proceeded, had not a pleasing vttetance pacefied their importunities to vnderstande, who hee might be with his earneſt desire to take him as hee was, which (sayth hee) I cannot but presume on, because I finde such a vnitie of goodneſſe: Bee therefore satisfied, that my simple trueth telleth you, I am *Montanus* of *Carberia*, vnfortunate in being that I am; and ten times vnfortunate in remembring what I was: meane I confeſſe, but now the meaner by looſing all meanes of my estate and liuing, as hauing with some substaunce and friends not eighteene dayes since burdoned one small Barke, and after some varietie of Stormes within theſe eighteene howers tasted the very bitterneſſe of aduersitie, which many with the meditation,

Auzitemus saued by Placandus changeth his name to Montanus

tation put me in minde of ſome misfortune: But thinges remedileſſe, are paſt care and cure; therefore I will teach my tongue to forget her owne language, and ouermaſter Miſery with an ill reſpected Vertue called Patience.

But *Placandus* tooke an other courſe, and from troubling him with any more queſtions, applyed the ordynary meanes of helpe in ſuch caſes, telling that they were men of Husbandrie and Cattle in the Kingdome of *Nagania*, and not Fiſhers; if then their ſupplyes could ſtand him in ſtead, or eſtates induce him to be one of the companie, hee might be ſure neither to fayle of ſuccour, nor complaine for want: and if my ſelfe ſeeme not leſſe worthy then another, I will welcome thee, and vpon good deſeruing, adde to thy welcome, a reward,

By this time, had *Montanus* youth ſhewed a ſcorne of the miſchiefe, which the Seaes vnmerciſulneſſe pretended, and hee remained in ſome extaſie, remembring his owne affayres, but eſpecially, that in ſo remote a place, hee muſt repreſent the fruite of a foraine Land, which the Inhabitants haue no other vſe of, but wondring at: Yet hoping to ſpende out the extreamitie of ſullen conceites with this varietie, and perceiuing the reſt as it were to ſtomacke his ſlackneſſe, that apprehended no ſooner the curteſie propoſed, he preſently opened the treaſurie of the poore, thanked all in generall, and gratified *Placandus*

in

in particular, accepting the kindneſſe with many wiſhes, that his honeſt endeuours might draw on ſucceſſe to confirme him a dutifull ſeruant.

Thus they returned with effectuall diſpatch of their iorney, and extraordinary newes of this aduenture, which ouer a day or two, was willing to participate it ſelfe to the reſt: Yet not in ſo ſlender a manner, but euery one amplified report, as their opinions receiued impreſsion, ſome prayſed his Feature, ſome his Countenance, ſome his vpright Comelineſſe, ſome his well knit Ioynts, ſome his Demeanour, and ſome his Conſtancie in the afflictions: nor wanted there others, which ſuppoſed him of better fortune, then his preſent ſhew portraited, ſo that for the time, *Placandus* houſe was neuer empty; many comming to ſee him, many to prayſe him, many to iudge of their prayſes, many not to be beholding to anothers report, many to giue notice, how well they had profited in the Schoole of Ciuilitie, and many to performe Goodneſſe, becauſe Vertue delighteth in action: Amongſt this number, *Coranus* though the laſt, which came, yet was not the leaſt meanes of his comfort, becauſe hauing himſelfe experienced diſtreſſe, he could, how counſell and reliefe might be ſeaſonably confirmed, and heere, like the diſcreete Phiſition, knowing the ſtate of his Patients body, reduced him to ſome moderation: ſo that their humanity, and *Placandus* good vſage, made *Montanus* beleeue, he was ordayned

Montanus at Placandus ſeruant ſaluted by Coranus.

to

to this quietnesse: For with a kind of delight he put in practise willingnes, and exercise the ouermasterers of difficulties, which vnder propped his knowledge with these particulars, how to pasture the Cattle before the Sonnes pride might preuent theyr stomackes, how to guide them ere the Euening had determined theyr rest; when to water, and where to refresh them; when to driue them to the Fold, when to retyre from the Field, and in what sort to vse the instruments of commaunde his voyce and Pipe, all which were done with so good a grace, that the beholders woondred at the action, and he mused how necessity had so soone acquainted the action: they loueing, his Maister liking; and hee satisfied to be thus loued and liked.

Coranus not onely relateth the story of Montanus, but describeth him to his daughter Deltona.

BY this time, Fame was not so nigardly, but the women as wel as men (to whom in deed curiosity seemed more proper) entertained the newes, & had not a customarie modesty restrained their desires, they would sooner haue satiated their longing then they did; yet because their Sommer Feast approched, in which many meetings, & ancient ceremonies had their seuerall passages, their forward desire was a little suppressed, and the feastiuall approched to put them in remembrance, that Time had strengthned their encreases, and this Stranger expected the setting themselues foorth to best becomming:

Trebizond.

In the meane while, *Coranus* returning home, told his Daughter *Deltona* (for the Man was wiueleſſe, and a ſtranger amongſt them) of *Montanus* ariuall with amplification of the circumſtances belonging to his ſhipwracke, which becauſe it agreed to their fortune, ſhee was willing to heare, and hee readie to dilate. Truely (quoth hee) I neuer ſaw a man of a better preſence, his ſtature comely and tall, yet not exceeding mediocritie; his members ſo framed, as if our firſt Mother looking backe on the worke, had like a skilfull ſtatuarie new poliſhed, what ſhee eſcaped; his Shoulders large, and Body vpright; of mighty Bone, and not ouermuch Fleſh; the Necke in equality of length made to ſupport a well proportioned Head; and an amiable, yet ſtately Countenance, which like ſome faire Planet in a froſtie night, by ſpeciall markes doth warrant him of Noble birth: For the Treſſes ſpatiouſly plighted ſeeme to boaſt of extraordinarie curiouſneſſe, and the *Tyara* ſumptuouſly faſhioned, to propoſe vnto vs a very certainty of wealth: his Eyes according to the courſe they intende louely, compelled to diſtemperature fearefull, & enclining to ſadneſſe, very Adamants of Compaſsion: to be plaine, hee may be what our greateſt thoughts can comprehend; but as he is, we repute him *Placandus* ſeruant by name of *Montanus*.

Coranus deſcribeth Montanus to Deltona.

Deltona could not but like her Fathers deſcription, and allow of his opinion; yet was not ſatiſfied,

fied becauſe ſhee had not ſeene him; and wiſhed to ſee him, that ſhe might be ſatisfied: wondring how her deſire tooke vpon it ſuch a libertie, and halfe aſhamed, leaſt her Father might perceiue her minde diſtempred, but hee poore man, had a world of conceites to thinke of: for though hee looked on her with a kind of demureneſſe, yet was it to ouerlooke her, leaſt ſhee might haue diſcouered his ſighing and teares; which to preuent he cunningly led her foorth into a larger feeld of other conference; and ſo they remained with a reciprocall gladneſſe not to be ſeene perplexed.

Now the Feaſt comming forward, *Placandus* much mooued with the deſert of his new Seruant, and as it were enriched with the care he had ouer his charge, and the proſperitie following his care, thought to grasifie him with a thing of ſome worth, and therefore one Euening by way of relation, hee told the Storie how his Wife, his louing Wife, his louing loued Wife *Iapeta*, miſcarying long ſince in child-birth, left him a fatherleſſe, and a ſorrowfull Widower, which for the time had ſuch impreſsion, that for feare to be ſo againe cilled to the account of paſsion, he vowed in *Marpeſias* Caue, he would neuer marry; and although I haue found it a matter almoſt of impoſsibilitie, to tie our frayltie to ſuch ſtrict rules; yet my honeſt *Montanus*, I haue waded through the difficultie, and I hope reſerued my ſelfe to ſome good

purpose: For laying open the Records of thy desert, I cannot but studie to make satisfaction, and by way of requitall doe adopt thee my Sonne. With that he ran ouer the discourse of their meetings, ancient ceremonies, the deuice of their dances, the solemnitie of their sittings, wraſtlings, pastimes, hollidayes, and willed him to remember his now aduancement accordingly.

Placandus adopteth Montanus his sonne,

But when Report had not spared to publish the newes, euery one reioyced to see Vertue ballanced with Equity and Recompence; onely this happened as a most strange allowance of Fortune, that amongst so many humoristes, no enuious eye ouerlooked him, or at least made any outward remonstrance of repining; which appeared in the loue borne before, and the attendance at the time appoynted: For ere the Morning (wherein their long expectation was to be satisfied with the dayes pleasure) had fully let out the Sunne out of his lodging: To *Placandus* as president of the maried, did the chiefest solemly bid God-morrow. *Montanus* as *Placandus* Sonne conducted the Youth: *Lemprana* a Widdow directed the Wiues; *Deltona Coranus* Daughter inuited the Virgins; and thus suffered this assembly a fourefold diuision, making their processions with instruments of Musicke round about the Downes, and altogether singing a pastorall to the honour of the Sunne; which finished, they presented their Offertories at *Marpesias* Caue.

This

This Caue ſtood in a Rocke within a mile of the Sea, and not fiue from the great Towne *Fortoma*, the entrance gratified with the ſhadow of two large Pines, the mouth ſomewhat more vpright, reſembled a well proportioned Hemiſphere; the couering was poliſhed by art to counterfeit a rough Marble, the foundation by Nature was paued with faſtned Pibbles, with a dellicate current of Water after the entercourſe of people did cenſe, and by induſtry as it were plighted with wel coloured Sedges, from which the Seaes moyſture was carefully dryed: the firſt Roome did welcome thee with a ſpatious roundeſſe, not much beautified with furniture or coſtlines, onely diuers Seats were heawne to ſome forme, as if meditation deſired reſt, and not vanitie: Next, a narrow ſtragling Entry gaue thee cauſe of woonder rather then delight; and laſt of all, a ſquare Roome quadrated with diuers Statuas wrought out of the pureſt Allablaſter inuited thee to the ſecrets of the place, and added commendaton to the worke-men, who demeaned them ſelues ſo well, as if heretofore they conuerſed with the *Siluan* Nimphes: For they made the Feete vnſhod, and yet not altogether vncouered; the Armes all naked, but that certaine Garlands like a bendy partition ſhadowed ſome part of the outwarde accident, their Garmentes a looſe kinde of Mantell comming Scarfewiſe vnder the right Arme, and made faſt on the left Shoulder,

The deſcription of Martoma.

Peſias Caue.

the Haire vntyed without curiositie, but that the hanging downe seemed a curiousnesse, hung downe with sufficient comelinesse, their Loynes were loosely girt with a kind of Belt, which at pleasure made the neither part of their Mantell resemble a full blowne double Rose; their Countenances were amiable, youthfull, rather smiling then sad, and bending to another, respected none but them selues; the Head was decked with a Corenet of Flowers, as if they meant to tell vs, Vertue compelleth Honour as well as commendation, and the whole portraiture so well graced, that a man could not but afford a reuerence. In the midst of this roome was a square Table seruing to many purposes, as contracts of Mariages, the parties enterchangably embracing ouerthwart, then kissing, then with a glad countenaunce laying one hand vpon another, swearing an inuiolable League, Bargaines and exchangings dispatched, both buyer and seller promising no more, then they meant to performe, and performing no lesse then they presumed to promise; offerings of their encreases presented, which euer returned with aduantage, according to the willingnes of the partie and the honestie of the giuer: sacrifices for pacification fulfilled, but their consciences layed open transgression, or their desires meditated Religion, knowing the Gods were to be adored, and their neighbours to be beloued. The *Anchresi* was extracted from

the blood of *Prometheus*, whom they superstitiously beleeued a great God, and once had his residence on Mount *Caucasus*, and so began a Familie amongst them: shee euer liued vnmaryed, and had sixe seruant Maides likewise to attend her her reputation was the greater, because she neuer fed the people with vntruths, nor exacted from them more, then their owne willingnes extended vnto: the inward Roome she kept shut, and yet stood open, while anyes businesse imported it, because the next commer might haue warning the place was supplyed: but why the name of *Marpesia* receiued estimation amongst them, you must bee thus aduised.

The Story of Marpesia.

IN the mightie Kingdome of *Scithia*, at such time, as the first *Amasons*, women of Heroiecall courage, gloried to make themselues instruments of vertue; raigned as Queen the excellent *Luciana*: a woman of great Industrie, & greater successe in her Industry: for much affecting the magnanimity of *Tolmilanda*, against the *Tartarian Mulmashag*, she fortunatly determined diuers famous exploits, and after gouerned the countreyes with such maiestie and wisedome, that other Kingdomes feared her displeasure, with louing her vertue; and her owne subiects had the practise of singular discipline, which so much the more grew beneficiall, by how much the imployment tended to their good: of her proceeded *Deiphaba*, and from her

the

the faire *Poliganbis*, vnder whom an enuious anger, that women should so raise the Trophees of *Honor*, excited the adioyning Kingdoms to conspire their destruction, and Fortune neuer constant but in vnconstancies, permitted a wicked Enuie to massacre the wonderfulnesse of nature: wherein, though the large circumstance, and the strangenesse of the Action keepeth my tongue from her full discourse; yet this must I discouer, that the course of time disappointed their ambition, and dissolued this imparadised company: onely *Marpesia* sister to *Poliganbis*, as it were alotted from the beginning to some deuinesse retyred hither, and erected another Regiment, but of diferent qualitie: For though shee grewe in fauour so Beautifull, and in Beauty so Celestiall, that the greatest Princes deuoted their endeuours to her acceptation: yet shee proclaimed against vanitie defiance, and *Cupid* stormed to bee so countercheeked: this made her abandon all Courtly fashions, least deceitfull tempration might at aduantage entrappe her weakneſſe, and heere repose herselfe in a solitarie Grotte, that a quiet dispensation from the company of men, might settle obedience to vndefiled thoughts. But some Writers haue iustified, how the desire of reuenge so exasperated her anger, that ere three yeeres had setled the Company, and drawne backe againe her dispersed Forces, shee returned with a newe Alarum, and prosecuted her attempts with sufficient successe;

leauing

leauing the example of her glory to animate *Lampedo* to maintaine this second industrie, shee prospering induced *Antiopa*, from her proceeded *Penthisilia* the mother of the gallant *Thalestris*, and the last *Marpesia*: with whose renowne other Kings offended, Enuie neuer desisted, vntill they shrunke indeed vnder destruction. Howsoeuer, the reziance of the former *Marpesia* gaue name to this place, and occasioned these Ceremonies: so that after a ciuill consideration had acquainted the people with husbandry and tillage: in the felling and stocking vp the wood was this Caue found, for the wonderfulnesse religiously preserued, and the conueniencie in manner afore said regarded: and now beginneth our Festiuall.

The Shepheards feast, wherein Montanus and Deltona meet.

AFter they had sacrificed at the Caue, the Custome allowed *Montanus* with his Batchellers to deuide themselues amongst the Virgines, as Fancy led opinion the way to iudgement: but who had seen the louely *Deltona* comming forward, must needs haue remembred, that *Diana* with her Nymphes added something to Natures allowance, when she was to entertaine so great a Lady; and *Iupiter* determined the Rape of *Calisto*: for whether the behauiour of this Stranger taught expectation the practise of other things, or whether time had ripened their estates, that they began to take benefit of their wealth; or whether their own conceits meant to make much

of

of the blesings of Nature, as not willing to continue in a barren rudeneſſe; or whether the acquaintance with ciuell Cities induced them to immitation, I diſpute not, but the fortune of this day was ſuch, that euery one in a manner ſequeſtred from the common baſeneſſe of *Tartary*, detayned the lookers on with the ſeuerall preſentation of beautie and comelineſſe.

The deſcription of the ſhepherds daughters.

Next to *Deltona* came *Crolaca* old *Silenus* Daughter, who manifeſted ſhe was begotten in a time of diſcretion by attyring her Head after the plaineſt faſhion, and becauſe no deuiſe obſcured any imperfection, ſhe might the better haue ſatisfied a iudicious Cenſurer, had not the neere approach of a prying looke marked the equalitie of her forehead tending to a little flatneſſe.

The ſecond was *Enſeria* very ill placed ſo neere the formoſt; her attire ſeemed rather fantaſticall then coſtly, and added this to ſuſpition, that ſhee determined ſome ſtrange courſe of life, becauſe her beautie was adulterate.

The third was *Hiale*, pleaſant *Paraſtoes* daughter, who might well haue brought liking with admiration on her ſide; but that a little ſmiling ſomewhat more then cheereſulneſſe (as if mirth determined not to goe out of a generation) cal'd her modeſtie in queſtion, and ouer-wrought the ornament of her face, the mouth.

The foorth was *Niphe*, from whom ſome quarter of a yeere before, Deaths Harrold ſummoned

both

both Father and Mother; who amased the beholders with the appearance of liuely colours naturaly embelishing her cheekes, onely a dead eye accused her of sullennesse: yet it might be former remembrance admitted the vnkinde ghuest sorrow, and limited commendation from ouer-reaching too farre.

Now marched *Ladra* Daughter to *Argias*, (to whom for his excellencie in Musick, they had giuen a Pension) and was quickly seene: For hauing her Haire large, long, and of a singular amber; she ware it in a kinde of loosnesse; but so kindly, that it seemed an excellent careleslnesse: because shee was faire and vpright; yet kept pale Lippes, the full life of beautie aside.

Then presented her selfe *Carista* lusty *Darpanes* Daughter, who of purpose to shew varietie, or vnwilling to patrizate being a Maide merited a choyce commendation, had not a kind of sobrietie made her strangenesse reputed a littell pride, whereby a liuelinesse wanted to set foorth her worth to the best becomming.

The seuenth was *Gralle Temellus* onely Child, in whom the best cunning might be deceiued, because, though now a fauourable countenance seemed dimmed with ouermuch Blood, yet imputing it to a kind of blushing, or allowing time the effect of moderation, without doubt she was an amiable president of delight: so that *Enuy* added not this as an other fault, her speech was ouer loude.

The eight was *Ranata*, whose cost questionlesse exceeded her fortune; in regard, that beside a well proportioned Body, the face could boast of no great Beautie, and wanted many parts to make it fauourable.

Now approched *Tarina* ritch *Pleios* Daughter, who made demonstration of her Fathers Wealth, by her owne statelinesse, yet in so good an order, that it seemed a prerogatiue, and had not a seuere Censor exprobated Nature for not allowing so sweete an aspect a perfect clearenesse, to all others it either appeared no defect, or appearing durst not so be counted, considering her owne countenance better marked, dispelled the former conceit, and made a new impression applaud all deserued worthinesse.

Next her came *Carix* blacke *Alcastes* Daughter, whose Haire enclining to a more then brownnesse, added that bie name: yet was she full of fauour, which seemed attractiue as ioyned to a sobes demeanor; so thou couldst not choose, but repine at Nature for vniting two contraries together, because the choysest louer was astonished, when that nakednesse (which modesty allowed to be seene) surpassed the rest for dellicacie and coloure.

The 11. was called the strange *Daphne*, who hauing no good part exactly lookt vpon, possessed yet euery part without exception, because her sweete cariage and dellicate behauiour stroke an amaze-

amazement, ere you could examine the particulars.

The laſt of eſpeciall note, was *Sabetha*, and in outward ſhew the leaſt; but ſuch a leaſt, as ſhined like a ſparcke of Pleaſure: for the Eyes were able to enflame, the Countenance to enamoure, and her ſelfe ſo well faſhioned to rauiſh: ſo that if a man would haue wiſhed to be the beholder of a dellicate creature, the outward ſhew warranted, and the inward perfection confirmed her the ſame.

But to returne to *Deltona*, like a braue pointed Diamonde triumphing ouer a border of prety ones, not altogether ſo well foiled, ſhee warranted her Liuery to be ſued out of the Court of Perfection, and with all vnited a magnificent portlineſſe; that *Montanus* imagined ſtrange things, and ſuſpected himſelfe ſurprized with the imagination, as though he durſt haue ſworne, ſhee deſerued farre better then a ſimple Cottage: yet allowing as a Stranger the iudgement of ſo many, that tooke her for *Coranus* daughter, he quieted his thoughts, becauſe the buſineſſe in hand diſappointed Meditation, had not the buſineſſe diſquieted him with Meditation. For hee was to ſalute, entertaine, welcome them, and to place them at the Table, which according to their olde Cuſtomes (leaſt error might breed repining in wronging one another) hee orderly performed: but taking *Deltona* by the hand, as if Loue and Fortune had vſed

ſome conference about it, he made her his owne obiect.

By this time it was a world to ſee, how a little ſtrangeneſſe can alter the whole companie: For the vpper Table conſiſting of the better, and elder ſort weeried *Placandus* with many queſtions, and in a manner ſeemed emulous againſt the other for hauing *Montanus* amongſt them: They againe reioyced in his preſence, and were ſoone induced to allow him ſome preeminence, and truely howſoeuer he liked their faſhions, or faſhioned himſelfe to their liking, or was now ſetled in the aduantage of his owne amiable and portly countenaunce, hee ſeemed, as if a good Husbande had preſerued a ſtately Cedar in a conuenient Groue of ſmaller Trees, whereby hee might boaſt of one ſurpaſsing all the reſt: but doe not ſuppoſe hee was ſo generally regarded of them, as particularly noted by *Deltona*, who could not ſo moderate her neereneſſe, but ſhee muſt eye him at the full, and when it ſeemed a pleaſing thing to behold, ſhe tooke the occaſion of beholding him to be pleaſed: then ſhe attempted to refraine, little knowing the reſtraint, made her next looking paſsionate: yet excuſed by the curteſie to Strangers, ſhe againe emboldned her ſelfe to looke, and to ſpeake, both performed with ſuch Loue-infuſing ſweetneſſe, that *Montanus* proteſted maieſtie was betrayed to the meaneſt deiection. For how could ſo great beautie ſeeme kinde, but hee

must

muſt be friendly? How could ſhee demaund, but he muſt anſwere? How could ſhe view him, but he muſt review her? How could ſhee craue, but he muſt allow it? How could ſhee execute any thing, but he muſt be pleaſed? Inſomuch that this firſt acquaintance warranted delight in the higheſt manner, and ſoothed their deſires to wiſh the continuance; yet thoſe wiſhes were not ready to admit any ſtedfaſtneſſe, becauſe *Montanus* was to forward the Dances, which for the firſt day concluded the paſtimes, wherein no ſooner ſetled he himſelfe to the meaſure with *Deltona*, but as if a ſoft *Eſterly* winde had with a ſudden ſtrength ſturred the thicke leaued trees, a certaine wiſpering of the company from mutuall eying them proceeded to liking; from liking to affecting; from affecting to prayſing; from prayſing to wiſhing them ſome good; and debating wherein, confirmed it by marriage: the rather becauſe they had demeaned themſelues ſo well before, and ſeemed now ſutable in a Liuerie of preeminence: but other Copies preſented occaſion of new ſpeach: yet *Montanus* ſtil in ſight was ſtil remembred, as buſied in ordring the next commers out to the Dances.

The diſcription of the ſhepheards.

HEere then was deciphered ſober *Eugenio*, who by the outward countance aſſured, his care was greater to encreaſe his wealth, then his pleaſure.

Louely *Miletus* a man ſtill practiſing of good as one, which knew no bad.

Rich

Rich *Polio*, whose abilitie outcountenanced imperfections, which without doubt would else in pouertie not without scandall haue appeared, besides hee published this errour, that counting Vertue but the passage of breath, hee esteemed Money before a Friend.

Rude *Sciscus*, who in an ill accomplished pride, shewed rather a willingnesse to the vice, then was fashioned to any Grace or good Manner.

Vnfortunate *Pleistos*, whose Fancie was euer haunted with a counter-changeable crossenesse, as a man playing with his Shadow running from thar, which followed him, and prosecuting, what seemed to fly from him.

Quiet *Dromos*, who yet was abused for his opiuion of consience, and a slackneſse to reueng euery disgrace, gaue suspition of cowardice.

Peuish *Derson*, who carlesse either of Order, or good Manner belonging to education, manifested a very scorne of behauiour, and harsh extremitie of humours.

Modest *Ergastus*, as one speaking little, but meditating the more, loth to giue occasion of offence, and vnwilling to remaine sullen.

Froward *Romero*, who indeed hauing a naturall gift of vtterance was not tongne-tyed, as supposing his speech to be still pleasing.

Stubborne *Bustosa* who had no good qualitie, but plainenesse.

Pleasant *Tedanus*, who graced with many qualities,

lities was as gracious to seuerall Companies.

Sturdie *Philastro*, who thought well of himselfe, because he was able to match his hardest willer.

Besides that did not dance, *Enuious Franio*, who was not onely ill in himselfe, but compelled to make all others like himselfe.

THVS prooued their Actions to bee the seruants of time, and with making their Procession once againe about the Pastures, that dayes iollitie was ended, so they thought it conuenient to depart, which without further curiositie they would haue done, had not *Montanus* by taking leaue of *Deltona*, giuen notice to the rest, that some Ceremonie of good obseruation, addeth a grace to each Action. But depart they must, and depart they did, which being no longer then the next Morning: The next Morning they thought it ouer long, vntill the swiftnesse of their footeman-shippe gaue the Reward to the best deseruer.

The continuance of the Feast, with the Exercises of the shepheards.

BVt when *Montanus* saw *Deltona* holde the Garland, at the vpper end of the Lists, which he quickly did, because the place and her selfe were of specialtie; or els Loue (if hee durst haue perswaded himselfe) is quicke sighted, he stood amazed, almost neglecting what hee had in hand: yet lest the company might ouer-looke his distemperature, or that his owne disposition still desired, what

The secodn meeting of Montanus and Deltona

was excellent; or ielious, that any other should watch *Deliona* with the like regards or emulous to hazzard his credit by being ouer-mastered, hee gallantly set forwatd; and was indeede so forward, that while the rest repined at Fortune to suffer a Stranger to glory in their disgrace, he had time to tell her, that her matchlesse beauty was attractiue, and had added wings to his willingnesse: with that shee gaue him the Garland to weare, and forgaue him a kisse which hee stole: Now? Whether kisses produce strange Effects? Or some naturall secret was infused with the new breath? he remained distracted, and seemed more pleased with the theft, then the sonne of *Maia*, when he had beguiled the euer waking eyes of *Argus*: but the Company comming forward deuided his desire, and ouer-wrought his countenance by bestowing liberall prayses on his desert.

Thus did a second meeting encrease more vertue, and liking. For many qualities in one man, helpe forward to excellencie; and diuers interviewes in well-willing parties, conclude affection; which (to bee plaine) prooued heere in short time a strange deuise of Fortune, but wee are not yet ready for such contentment, because the third dayes Exercise, which was Wrastling (*Rhacandus*, *Silenus*, and *Argias*, Iudges) presented it selfe with an excellent temprature. Imagine yet *Montanus* was not so hasty, but he looked vp to the Mountaine *Deliona*, who soone apprehended the motion,

tion, and looked too; by which he ſuppoſed ſhee bade him to remember himſelfe, as if the ſecret of his deſaſter had been diſcouered: In this feruencie he ſtepped foorth vncalled, neuer ſeeming angry till now; not to be feared, till hee was angry, and then were all commers ouer-throwne: what he yet did, proceeded rather from a neceſſary vertue, then a vaine oſtentation, vnleſſe it were in the contention with *Franio*, whom for ill lookes and baſe manner of Play, valour ſcorned, ſo that adding a little violence to diſdaine, the fall brake his arme; no man ſo ſorry for his hurt, as glad of *Montanus* eſtimation, which by a generall Plaudite, and the yeelding vp the Prizes, gaue him teſtimonie of regard.

The third meeting of Montanus and Deltona.

NOw the Cuſtome ſhadowed the ſecrets of paſsion, if perhaps there happened a mutuall liking of Parties: For it was an honour to the preuailer, if he beſtowed the Prize (which was a Watchet Scarfe of curl'd Cypers, embrodered ouer with Starres of gold) on any worthy ſubiect: Whereupon *Montanus* with a wanton pleaſantneſſe, much gracing his demeanour, preſented the ſame to *Deltona*; who tooke it, but in ſuch a manner, that ſhee knewe not, whether the gift, or the handſomneſſe in the deliuerie pleaſed more, beſides: her ſudden bluſhing matched to contraries together, feare & gladneſſe. But heere ended their Paſtimes, which ac-

cording to the true nature of pleasure, least a continuall fatiating should rather glut then delight, did they vse with sparingnesse: so that euery one applyed their seuerall affaires, no man imagining any ill, and therefore not practising; no man practising, because they were enemies to dishonestie; no man dishonest, for friendship helpeth vp and downe the burdens of the weake, and scaueth no fault vnexcused. Else you must thinke, heere were such, as did loue, could hurt, might malice, durst controll, and knew to reuenge: all which were afterward put in execution, when folly and impietie entred the breach against goodnesse. But the time importuned their care ouer their estates, which consisting in the prosperity of their cattle compelled a generall retyring to their Heards & Flocks.

Montanus in loue with Deliona.

NOw; what was this retyring, but a very tyring of *Montanus*, in whose concert Fancy already had made Impression? For though the outward shew discouered no distemperature, yet the wit much out of frame, strriued to restraine it self from any base scope: and whether other company put him in minde of the absence of *Deliona*? Or that the nature of absence bred a greater desire to possesse the thing vnobtained, he suddenly began to be angry with himselfe for suffering her departure, and encreased his anger with despaire of her returne; but giuing that stoppe a dash with an heroicall presumption, that

nothing

nothing was impoſſible, it ſomewhat ſetled him in the hope of a new meeting: at laſt he began a ſtrict examination, why his minde ſhould ſo run on *Deltona*; his ſleepes in broken dreames of *Deltona*; his dreames, that hee meeteth *Deltona*? his waking fancie recounting the worth of *Deltona*; ſtedfaſtly ſuppoſing a ſhepheards daughter could not be *Deltona*? But the more hee meditated, the ſooner he receiued a foile, for lacke of reſolution; ſo that by this time the want of the thing longed for was not ſo great, as the meanes to obtaine it daungerous: his feare, miſtruſting the practiſes hee meant to ſet on worke, and his deſire importuning ſome ſatisfaction: this willed him to repayre to ſolitarineſſe, where hee quickly ranne ouer the rugged Fieldes of diſquiet; ſometime condemning fondneſſe and folly for conforting together, then exclaming on his owne weakeneſſe, for yeelding to ſuch degenerate companions: other-while hee met with conſideration, that man was ſubiect to many inconueniences; anon he encountered with patience, a ſtrange vertue to pull on heauier burdens; ſometime hee vpbrayded his peuiſhneſſe for his ſubmiſsion, after the Battle with *Leonidas*; and by & by, he protested to abiure both the place and the companie: But this ſeeming a counterfeit ſtoutneſſe (as if hee had offended by ſuch imagination) ſet him foorth to the recourſe of his Friendes; but alas, their Welcome prooued like a trayterous Banquet,

wherein miſchiefe counterfeiteth to betray a man, and ſounded in his cares, they were the enemies of Repoſednesſe; whereupon hee practiſed againe to be alone, had not ſo many by wayes of Fancie confounded him, that hee durſt not abide the fearefulneſſe of being alone. Thus euery thing framed the vnframing of his health, and brought him at laſt to the vnkind acquaintance of a Feuer, whereby he wanted orderly reſt, and naturall diet, the ſoule bearing the body company in tollerating many changeable inflictings, as it had yeelded to a ſence-weakning violence; ſometime leaning the head againſt a firmeneſſe, as if he meant to ſettle his Braine: otherwile the Armes croſſed
» with ſtrength, reſembled two ſtrong Barres,
» which bound in the Heart from flying out of her
» incloſure: Sometimes his Feete ſtood him in ſtead to pace out his griefe: anone a Pallet ſeemed proude of the eaſe it affoorded: preſently the Ground was his reſting place, and at laſt by his vnreſt, hee could abide in no place; which when the good old *Placandus* had diſcouered, the care and opinion, which he conceiued of his new adopted Sonne, made him pitty his diſtreſſe, and put in execution his pitty.

» My Sonne (quoth hee) doubt not to vnlocke
» the treaſure of thy thoughts to mee: For as I
» haue reſpected thy deſert, and loued thee with the
» ſame reſpect; ſo hath my loue ouerwatched thy
» griefe, and that loue made me partaker of the ſor-

row:

now: Be therefore perfect in thy former Wisedome, and thinke there is a remedie to each desaster; by my Zeale, and thy owne Vertue I therefore coniure thee, let mee know the occasion, whereby thou hast admitted this discontentment, and welcommed so vnkind guestes as Griefe, and Disquiet. Looke how a man hearing the sound of some sweete harmonie, and vnwilling to deceiue his sence of the pleasure, biddeth a silence; so stood our passionate *Montanus*, while *Placentius* had thus broken the enclosure of his sullennesse: and finding Silence a tyrant maintaining this faction of distemperature against him, he thus replied. O Father, this childishnesse, folly, and negligence, is worthy reprehension! yet pardon my vowillingnesse either to be childish, foolish, or negligent? And this I doe protest, vnlesse some secret influence had ouer-wrought my spirits, no peeuish Humour could haue thus mastred mee. For to be plaine; I like *Deltona*, I loue *Deltona*; yea and liue in the loue and liking of *Deltona*: But suppose not: this breuitie marcheth with the same slightnesse. For a world of secrets depend on my speaches, yet my tongue hath now mitigated the burdensome paine of my heart, which otherwise like a vdl stopped Ouen, had increased the burning heate for lacke of vent.

When *Placentius* heard the name of *Deltona* pronounced, you might haue compared him to a man meeting an Adder in an vnbeaten path,

and

and starteth for feare, as if indeed the wormle had mischieued him; so gaue hee a sudden motion prognosticating further mishap: Oh (saith hee) what doth *Montanus* attempt? I thinke she hath vowed her selfe to scorne, and proclaimed defiance against Fancie: Else would she neuer haue checked Fortune in her full flight of happinesse toward her? For *Rugeo* Duke of *Fortuna* tempted her constancie, and attempted to perswade a more glorious alteration: but she to all our amazements denied the honour, and ouer-prised this quietnes beyond Courtly vanitie: yet (*my Sonne*) because Loue and deuine appointment hath some secret in store, I wish thee not despaire; but vse my credit, and thine owne desert to hold the beame, wherein Loue weigheth the fancies of women: onely as a Caueat, beware of *Franio*; for besides the generall ill conditions wherewith he is infected; I heare he whispereth, yea murmureth against thee, which proceeding from malice hath this propertie, neuer to desist, till with aduantage it prooue inficious. Farre bee it from my obedience answered *Montanus*, not to make vse of your aduice and encouragement, I will therefore by the great eye of heauen, goe to morrow to *Coranus* howse, a day wherin as the world agreed to yeeld me life, so may *Cupid* assent to afford mee ioy to my life, but while he prepareth for his iourney, let vs see how *Deltona* is willing to admit him.

After

Deltona in loue with Montanus, and how they came togeather.

AFter the Festiuals had end, *Coranus* with his Daughter returned home, who poore soule very quickly began another manner of Banquet; For somewhat too curious in the musing at her owne weaknesse, to be ouerwayed with conceit, shee liued extreame pensiue; now whether continuall pensiuenesse debarring life openeth vnto griefe, griefe vnto distemperature, and distemperature vnto sickenesse, I know not; but shee seemed suddainely surprised: and neither waked with quietnesse, nor slept in soundnesse, shee would looke sad, sigh often, practise extrauagant actions, and yet say little; which questionlesse kept the more in store against shee discouered her passion: But her Father was mightily perplexed, because his care extended to the highest degree of regard, and her sorrow continued with the lowest manner of trouble: therefore finding the body distempered from the minde, hee seised to ouerwatch her, if at any time he might discouer the cause. For though Phisicke can cure diseased bodies, when the Infirmitie is knowne, yet hath it small power ouer troubled Passions, arising from hidden Distemperature: At last (some fruite of businesse emboldning her to presume vpon his absence) his patience ouer matched ignorance, and she morning acquainted this absurdnesse.

"Surely (quoth shee) I cannot beleeue my selfe

my selfe subiect to baseneſſe, and the roſt caryed with as ill violence: Ah Gods, a Shepheard, a Stragler, an out-caſt thus to entrappe me, and reuerſe my deuotion: what worſe temptation: where is the goodneſſe my reſolution boaſted of, euer countermanding incontinent thoughts? what quite exiled? where is the magnanimitie which gaine-layed the Duke in his greateſſe, and kept chaſtitie vpright in a ſimple Cottage? what? worne with time, or out of countenance with allurement? why then I ſee continencie hath ſecret enemies, and continencie hidden foes, who like traitours in an ambiſh caſe an ouerthrow by aduantage? But oh deuine Loue, this fooliſh preſumption of ours is but a mockerie to withſtand thy violence, and the glory wee ſeeke in ſtriuing againſt nature, an vnkinde detention from happineſſe: as though wee were tyed and indeed deſired to finiſh ſome excellent worke, and yet kept backe our ſelues in beginning the ſame. Therefore recant and recall my deuotion? yet deare vertue turne not thy face from me, for beſides my obtaining open the way of incontinencie, I will ſeale my couenants to thee with my deareſt bloods and bleſſed *Gemma*, what doe I know, but thou haſt ouerlooked my patience, and brought *Hermanno* to patterne out the perfection of man (ſo to ſpeak) with a liberall trueth, what ere hee is, vertue and honour hath queſtionleſſe taught him the way to full grating goodneſſe. Here thoſe excellent lights

of

of her bodie were dimmed with moisture, and passion had so racked her spirit, that though the smart caused her to confesse any thing, yet the extremitie of paine, ouer-wrought the instrument of vtterance, and with a sweet stilnesse enforced silence, which her father was moued to pitie, and could not choose but accompany her with his teares, being once minded to haue discouered himselfe, but fearing to ouer-countenance her by being interrupted, hee suffered the humour to haue a little scope, and so retired somewhat pleased hee now knew the cause of her griefe.

Montanus commeth to Coranus and Deltona.

As these feares and sorrowes had their seuerall passages betweene *Coranus* and his Daughter, one morning (yet not so early to except against good manners) the opening of the outward Dore gaue them warning of some Strangers accesse, and the old man hastning to vnlocke, the other found *Montanus* in the Court with a ready message from *Placentius* to speake with him. Truely (sayd he) welcome, and if my welcome might last so long, as my desire could you welcome, I should doe nothing but repeate welcome. In this extraordinarie [illegible] *Montanus* presence had stroke both a reuerence and delight, or his daughters [illegible] dresse, hee vshered him through two roomes into a louely chamber, and bad him [illegible] prepared his entertainement. But when *Montanus* beheld *Deltona* [illegible]

sadly couched on the Rushie shore, they strewing the ground, and shee bestrewing them with her Teares, which (as water cast on a white Wall leaueth a show of spotted impression) seemed shadowes of pale Pearles: in a kind of generall pitty, hee condemned Distemperature for maintayning a quarrell against such rarenes: then finding it touched him neerer, as liking the party, the eyes of affection bad him looke for excuse; had he either knowne what to doe, or durst haue done what hee knew: at last checking his foolish feare, seeing Loue had in deed chayned his heart to her deuotion, by many made paces, as if *Orpheus* were againe to passe by the euer-waking *Cerberus*, hee approached vnto her: To whom when he came, and that a little disdaine had scorned to be entrapped, whereby a woman in her remembrance hasteth to lap her cloathes together, which for her ease she had vnlaced: the strangenesse of the accident ouercame her former desire, and a pretty shame to be watched, made her halfe mayde of what she wished; and her feare onely put in practise a confused flight, which *Montanus* durst not yeeld vnto, and therefore with a reuerent speedinesse caught hold of her arme, almost bare by hastily misfacting the artificiall garment, whereby his eyes failed now their quicknesse, and now thought he imagined a very fire to burne his presuming hands. As for what was treasured vnseen, he imputed that to the cunning of the Ieweler who first laying abroad to the contentment of the

beholders his ſmaller priſed Riches, doth only declare, hee hath a lem of that ineſtimable vallew, as may well ſuffice to be a preſent for the greateſt Monatch: with the like diſpoſition was *Montanus* tranſported, and therefore loth to looſe the benefit of what his hope aſſured was pretious, hee entreated her aboad; and perceiuing her ſomewhat more tractable, thus diſputed the matter.

Moſt worthy of the greateſt worth; neither are teares the Antidotes of griefe, nor griefe a preuention of trouble: yet do we complaine to ſee Mortality the tennisball of Fortune, now ſtroke low, then mounted high; anone beaten backe againe, and at laſt banded quite away, little remembring that Vertue remaineth immaculate, and bringeth Patience to ouermaſter Aduerſitie, which in very meane ſpirits vpholdeth weakneſſe and frayltie, by conſidering diuine prouidence hath ordained, what neither induſtry can preuent, nor mans cunning auoyde: but in greater courages, when ſoeuer croſſes chaunce, there muſt be a repreſenting of the Sunne, which at the loweſt ſeemeth biggeſt; and indeed affliction retyreth, when ſhee is with conſtancie tollerated: Deny not therefore Vertue her due in ſubiecting it to ſo base an enemie as Deſpaire; nor Beautie preeminence in thus diſordering thy moſt faire amongſt the faireſt faireneſſe: But leaue this ſadneſſe, & by the immortall powers I ſweare (which with an Emphaſis he pronounced) no diſcontentment ſhall affright thee:

" for my selfe wil vndertake the office of a neighbor
" to comfort, of a friend to assist, or of: which hee
" would faine in a more kinder terme haue vttered,
" but not knowing what it was, hee left her to imа-
" gine, what it might be.

Heere a mannerly stoppe, and a prety fashion of amazement caused his strength compassing her tender wrist to suffer some changes, and withall a sad kinde of looke waranted his wordes to proceed from true desire: but when shee marked the orderlinesse of his behauiour, and that a different grace warranted a greater desert, then his present fortune: a blessed hope sent to her countenance the Messenger of delight, and erected vp a well proportioned body to her better becomming: yet had a powerfull reason in the time of this parlie so tempered her ioy, that shee meant not ouer sodenly to consent to her owne minde, nor yeelde him too hasty libertie of presumption; like a discreet Master, who though his seruant bee painefull wil not ouer-familiarly thanke, but with good
" order embolden him to goe forward in his duties
" therefore as if shee could haue entertained an an-
" gry mislike, she thus replyed.

Why, who is *Montanus*? that thus enueigheth
" against Fortune, as if honour had read a Lesson
" of magnanimitie vnto him? or from whence pro-
" ceedeth this audacity to poison my vertues spring
" with the dregs of peeuish Loue? Or what male-
" uolent Planet was ouer this day predominant,

that

that I must be thus intercepted? Beleeue me, I am afraid I haue played the truant in the Schoole of Modestie, and forgetting my rules by ouer courtesie allowed this stranger some hardinesse: Assure thee therfore, that in the very mislike of this boldnesse, all other good parts are eclipsed in thee, and howsoeuer I could be perswaded to suppose any goodnesse in mariage, *Placandus* sonne must take another course: for my wits were neuer so enchanted to repulse the offer of a mighty Duke, and submit to a shepherds flattery: but to be plaine, I haue deuoted my selfe to another Saint, and offred my incense on the pure altar of Continency.

When hee had heard her out, as if a sudden feare fatally prognosticated some following mischiefe, or sullen anger kept the motion of the tongue from true liuelinesse: hee stood amazed, fearse able to yeeld a reason why he was amazed: like a man meditating in secret stilnesse, who looketh, yet perceiueth not on what, by reason the minde transporteth the vse of sence to other purpose: But knowing custome taught all women the deniall of what they wished, as though hee would haue chid her for such generall peruisnesse he once againe replyed. By the giuer of my life, this peremptorinesse shall not accord with successe, nor will I hazard the losse of what I esteeme so precious: Remember therefore the wrong thou shalt doe to nature in obscuring her blessings from the delight of men; remember the displeasure to the

world,

" world, in deprriuing it of the fruites of Mariage:
" Remember the iniurie to mee, who can ballance
" thee beyond expectation, and boast his regarde
meriteth a better recompence, then despight.
With this the countenance began to readmit a
pristinate excellencie, and *Deltona* supposed shee
saw a new *Montanus*; which questionlesse much
imboldned her, and bade hope entertaine an o-
ther Ioy: Now when Ioy came to play her part,
no deuice serued to counterfeite Disdaine: onely
Wisedome limitted her Passion within sure
bounds, and she somewhat relenting, thus answe-
" red. Well, if the meditation of this busines perswad
" mee to a sweete mischiefe, I will not altogether
" reiect your remembrance; and if my *Genius* ha-
" uing hitherto protected my Fayth and Chastity,
" thinke it now time to supplant it with a necessary
" ill, I am content to lay open the records of your
" merit and loyaltie: Yet presume not in this as an
" answer, nor allow Hope any libertie to suppose,
" that I shall euer be perswaded to loue. But hee
" hearing her name Loue; with a portly demeanour
stepped forward, and caused a mannerly neerenesse
to make impression on her lippes, saying withall.
My dearest life; by thy Beautie I sweare, it shall
returne from whence it came, and thus will I
keepe in this loue-breathing sweetnesse, that it
may diue backe againe to the heart, and worke
there conuenient motiones of delight: now whe-
ther the sudden audacitie countermaunded pre-

uention;

tention; (or the grace vnited purchased attonement, I will not dispute, but she neither seemed so angry, nor so sad, onely she told him, her customes admitted not so much by a circumstance of wanconnesse.

Corauus is pleased with Deltonas recouery, and Montanus company.

BY this time the aged *Corauus* prepared his viands, and comming vnto them found as it were a new cheerefulnesse in his daughter, which to the disturbe he framed all his speach to *Montanus*, saying; that it troubled him not a little in the wanting sufficiencie to entertaine him. Leaue off such ceremonie (replyed he) I am more troubled to finde *Deltona* pensiue and distempered, but time and her owne constancie will frame her thoughts to better purpose, I doe purpose (in deede (quoth he) but to the greatest purpose) how shall I requite the courtesie of the good *Placandus*, that wisheth so well to an vndeseruing creature? By the encrease of our flockes I sweare (quoth *Montanus*) he should be a contrary to all men I haue conuersed with, who did not more then wish well to such all pleasing goodnesse: you so answered (*Corauus*) then would my dwelling, my selfe, or my daughter had any meanes to winne you to continuance? promise for your selfe good Father (replyed *Deltona*) for company worketh temptation, and Youngmens flames are the baites of dishonestie, which they suppose with ayde praises

to ſupplant. Nay (quoth *Montanus*) for my part I will not abuſe what is of worth with flatterie, but thinke, that praiſes proceede from neceſsitie. Then belike (ſayde *Deliana*) you make prayſing a neceſſary helpe to flatterie, that was cunningly concluded. But I hope (anſwered hee) you will not ſo hemme in my ſpeeches with vnkind exception. No, no, (replied *Gerania*) be ſure my daughter meanes well, whatſoeuer ſhee ſaith: and quoth *Deliana*, *Montanus* ſpeakes well whatſoeuer he meaneth: and *Deliana* lookes well (anſwered *Montanus*) to be ſpoken vnto. But words ” ſaid ſhe, be like the paſſage of a ſhippe, leauing no ” ſhew behinde of her courſe, and promiſes reſemble ” fading ſhadowes. Then try performance (replied *Montanus*) vertue appeareth in her liueliest colours in action. Nay, yet obiected *Deliana*, better liue with want of ſomething may be wiſhed for then in certaintie of euery thing breedeth trouble. Why (quoth *Montanus*) is there ſuch trouble in ” Marriage? I aſſure you not (ſaid *Gerania*) for if ” the parties loue vpon a ſure ground, they reſemble a building ſtrongly founded, and one part depending on another equally deuideth the comfort: againe, when inconueniencies ariſe, leaſt the burden proue too grieuous, a yoke-fellow helpeth, ſo betweene them it is made lightſome, beſides the tirannie of want is ſurpriſed with content, and mutuall agreement ouercommeth neceſsitie. But leauing this paſſe (beleeue me) (*Montanus*) we are

very

very glad of your companie, and since your aduenture, me thinkes there appeareth (I know not) what alteration. But I know (said *Deltona*) to looke smooth, to dispute cunningly, to seeme ceremonious, to bring presents, to vse protestations, and commit errors: and if all this tende to good purpose, I see no cause of mislike, nor I of liking answered *Deltona*, but to despise all these and make account of simple truth. Well, quoth *Corauus*, let vs set our teeth on worke, as we haue done our tongues, and for conclusion *Deltona* and I will visite *Placaudus* to morrow.

Thus passed away the time, and this meeting with the time, yet could not *Montanus* (after thankes for his entertainement) but take a kinde leaue of *Deltona*, leauing her indeed musing at the departing with these tearmes: My life and Loue once for all liue to be happy, and suppose, there is more in *Montanus* loue then thou canst imagine; so farewell, and let them feare ill, that wish not *Deltona* to farewell. But least he should ouerprise this iollitie, misfortune presented him to an ominous chance, the meeting with *Franio*, the same *Franio*, whose willingnesse to mischiefe exceeded his power, yet had his power compassed some hatefull stratagems: The same *Franio*, whose arme was broken in wrestling with *Montanus*, and whose heart receiued dilation from the stumpe of malice: The same *Franio* who therefore pryed into *Montanus* actions, not with a desire of imi-

Montanus meeteth with Franio, comming from Corauus.

tation, nor with a seeming wickednesse only to find
fault at imperfections, but with an implacable ha-
tred to supplanting him, as the least occasion happed;
euery way playing the Monster of Nature; neither
daring to execute his owne reuenge, nor willing
that he should perceiue him reuengefull. For still
his countenance was as full of flatterie, as the heart
of Deceit: This appeared in his ceremonious salu-
ting of *Montanus*, which continued with tearmes
of good will, and by way of insinuation gaue him
to know his loue was discouered: insomuch that
he knowing excuses would increase suspition, in
good fashion told him, how *Placandus* had intrea-
ted *Cyrus* and his Daughter to visit him to mor-
row. That is very strange (quoth *Franio*) for euer
since the Duke threatned to steale her away, wee
neuer saw her but at the Feast. Here might *Mon-
tanus* haue easily stepped into a little curiosity, as not
yet acquainted with any certainty of this story, but
loth to be beholding to such a man for a discourse,
he somewhat cunningly shifted him off, & by ex-
cuse of businesse, as contraries, departed the one
full of diuelish mischief, the other of honest desires.

When *Montanus* came home, he told his Fa-
ther the substance and circumstance of his Iorney,
the sicknesse of *Deloya*, the entertainement of
Cyrus and her, at their dinner the manner of his
departing, and the meeting with *Franio*: withall
he asked *Placandus*, if *Deloya* were borne in that
Country, and the reason, because he thought her
beha-

behauiour euer lately, and that shee managed a different carriage from the rest. To be plaine (answered he) it is full twelue yeares since her Father and she were cast on shore by shipwracke; where euer since they haue continued with such applause & regard, that of him we haue esteemed as a man industrious and peaceable; and of her, as a very sparke of delight. Well, (sayd *Montanus*) she will be heere to morrow, and then I perswade mee wee shall heare of newes. But returning to *Delinda*, she finding it burdensome to keepe her meditations so inclosed, conceited of reliefe in reuealing them. Truly (quoth she to her Father) my minde giues mee, this maid is but the obiect of some extraordefor Prime; else from whence comes this grace, this gallantnesse? this maiestie withall? His last speech: there is more in *Montanus* discouerie then I can imagine. Then belike, quoth *Corana*, he spake to you of Loue? I cannot dissemble (answered shee) he did, & if his owne speeches had not conduced me into the fields of expectation, he might perhaps haue marched in the traine of his vertuous conduct. Now was *Corana* distracted, not remembring his troubles past, the greatnesse of *Delinda* birth, & the wonderfull matters depending on her discouerie, hee resolued to giue his consent to any disparagement, and yet durst not vnbosome his thoughts with her owne. Some againe in a preference of *Montanus*, hee suspected a worse displeasure, if it should afterward appeare

that he had been an obstacle to his desires. Therefore with a kinde of indifferencie, like a skilfull
" Rider, that neither checketh too hard for feare of
" disordering the mouth, nor yet giueth that liberty
" to countenance any head-strong defect: her thus
" replyed. Well *Dellora*, hitherto all is well; and since you are thus amended, thinke the Gods keepe their mercy in store, and powers infinite: Let not vs then subuert the frame of their workmanship by being wilfull or prejudiciall, but rather consent to direction and aduice, which resemble the props of a ruinous Building: Be therefore affable, yet vse it as a vertue, not imperfection. Loue with relation to deseruing worth; yet consent not too soone, least thy good meaning be misinterpreted. Consent at leasure, yet keepe chastity secured so shalt thou be sure of more desire, and more reuerence: for though men say they can be contented with a vertuous familiarity, yet is the conquest of that, the *Inde* of their treasure. With all bee not an enemie to Nature, in
" suffering the fruit to perish without vse, but let a
" timely Harueast reape vp the Corne, least it fade as it
" stands: Thus shalt thou be worthily counted a rich
" manured ground, and to that ende were thou part of our first Fathers Inheritance. Oh, but (answered *Dellora*) How shall our weakenesse ouersway strong passions? Fancy hath no limitation, and affection is only subiect to the outward demeanour, as you see in the world so many matches conclu-

ded

ded in despight of reason. True said *Coranus*, where Vertue prevaileth not against Idlenesse, or good counsell helpeth to see the deformitie of Folly, which is as easily suppressed with carefull endeavours, as maintained with reckelesse liberty. But thinke you (answered the halfe-fearefull *Deliena*) that inferiour meanes can reuerse appointment? Questionlesse (replied *Coranus*) Destinie is inevitable, and have an Irrevocable decree, yet is it conuenient to tell wilfull youth the contrary, that refraining their frowardnesse, they may suppose it a treason against wisedome, not to be directed by the Chiefe of adulse. Well (concluded *Deliena*) let the Gods bee Controllers of mischiefe, and men the professors of reason. Thus posted that night to the Kingdome of darkenesse, and the next morning like a bitter rose throwne into a dish of sweet syrupe approched, wherein Fortune threatned to be in this manner maleuolent.

The Story of Franio, an emulous opposite, and riuall of Montanus.

LIttle knew *Montanus* of *Franios* affection vnto *Deliena*, and lesse suspected what inconuenience the former parlee had concluded, and therefore simply nourished the infant Hope of successe: But *Franio* as it were conferring with Mallice, exasperated the same with these particulars; that *Montanus* should so sodainely attaine to be *Piscandus* Sonne? then from the naturall Country-men to carry away the Prize with the good opinion of the beholders, next amongst all

other

others, to triumph in his disgrace and hurt. Lastly (as it were to despight him) to seeme acceptable to *Delone*: so that with the spide iealously looking thereon, her soule Enuie raged more then before. Now when Enuie saw her selfe Mistris of conceit, shee desisted not, vntill her associat rage were entertained. Rage against interdicting reason, yeelded to the violence of Hate, and Hate remaining boyling with the heate of cruelty, meditate nothing but reuenge: with these humours gathered together some speciall conclusions, though not altogether so wicked as himselfe, yet easily seduced, as men vntractable to good, and therefore vnesteemed for their apparant bad, as not liuing in a liberall opinion of conscience, therefore neuer sollicited but for diuelish attempts, such as wilfully vntill, therefore by their honourable neighbours debarred from the bewer sort, as men wanting, hauing no setled estates of their owne, therefore careless from whom they did purloyne; as men supposing Religion but matter of policie, and therefore seeming further feare or punishment. To these besides mercenary reward, and strict alliance, he thus coloured the extremities of his malice.

Wicked idle men described:

Although I know your loues and resolutions concurre in one course toward mee, whereby I shall but seeme idle humoured, either to insinuate into the first or pupill the latter; yet must I countenance the occasion of our now meeting with the

strength

strength of reason, and say something to put you in minde, that life is a tedious burden, ouerprest with disgrace. It is not therefore vnknowne to you, how farre the pride of this Stranger (I meane *Mercury*) hath extended, insomuch, that if before we remained in your highe estates with Wealth and credite, we now remaine impayred in the one, and scandalised in the other. For, whose Bookes and Hands haue prospered, but his? Whose name is remembred, but his? Whose remembrance applauded, but his? so though we durst not put our selues forward, or seeme vnworthy regard; yet this were somewhat tollerable, if yeilding to good parts, Vertue were rewarded accordingly. But with sclerous wrong hath set open the inclosure of an arrogant spirit, not sparing to dispise vs all. For beside the hurt in the fall, and the disgrace in the hurt, he scoffeth of it, and threatneth further. Besides, I know scorne of my good will, he alloweth the contempt, and maketh a iust of my desires: besides, the paining us with cruelnesse, he contenteth with teares of affection. And in a iollie mountenance strange things, which must needes aggrauate our miserie, if we preuent not the worst, which will follow by perceiuing the ill that hath chanced. For my part therefore I submit my selfe to her pecuishnesse, not his prescription, but shall thus conclude. To morrow I go to dine with her Father to *Plicandus*: now because I would

bne

as a Prince stomaking her base contradiction, is not to be worse abused with a greater prelention, I meane to intercept her Letter, and present her vnto him, as if the Heauens had taken notice of his passion. Be therefore louders of your kindred, and Countries, for though feares and terrours should be projected, the exployte will aduance vs as men of action; my selfe will prostrate my estate in profuse manner before you, and the Duke shall remaine a powerfull friend, like a maine Rocke to breake the force of impious Violence.

When he had deliuered his minde, they onely considering the present complaint, and falsely misconstring the rehearsing of the businesse, soone consented to what he perswaded (for indeed here were none to perswade otherwise then he would consent vnto) and so they promised with foure on horseback, and fiue well appointed, to be in readinesse; which though it seemed very slender against an enterprise of difficulty, yet had they reason to presume sufficient against a silly Mayden, and old Man. But returning to *Organa*, ere diuine morning had fully drawne the Curtaines of light, his remembrance brought him to a kind of feare, that he had ouerpassed good manners in not attending her, on whom his very soule and thoughts attended: therefore he prepared himselfe, not forgetting some addition of comelinesse, as if indeed loue had taught him the way to handsomnesse, and so he saluted *Corasmus*, and againe

and againe the much attractiue *Dalinda*, whom Hope had long since perswaded to thinke on nothing, but new delight. Their passed curtesie counterchangeably betweene them, and so comming along, they entred the freedome of other conference, vntill the freedome and conference presented them in the bondage of *Francis* treason, who had no sooner a sight of them, but suddenly stepped forth proclaiming quarrelle, and all should be for the losse, considering resisting increased treason: whereupon one of them itrelligently prophaning a Virgins priuiledge by maine strength aduanced *Dalinda* toward *Francis* lapp, had not *Maximus* stepped to the Weapon, as hee layd it from him, and ran him quite through; whereby the lately poyne catching hold of her Gowne in his falling, made her fall too. But when *Maximus* saw her fall, it was not a feare, it was a very dispaire of her life hastned his race, and by ouer great desire to saue her, hee might haue lost himselfe, but that *Dalinda* cryed, I am well, if you take care of *Trin*. This directed his other sence to performe the best part of his function, which saw *Francis* hasting against him with his Sword drawne. Now was Valour almost betrayde for want of Reuolution, because on the one side Death appeared in desperate encounter; on the other, Shame in a cowardly retreat: But when *Dalinda* with temperance seemed to complaine of the wrong, and their wrong in his owne nature

but in minde of redresse, he aduaunced the colours of a magnanimous heart, and so as a man experienced in the many changes of execution, he wrapped the Mantle about his arme, and told the beholders they should see a strange fight, a man on foote and vnarmed encounter with another on horsebacke well prouided: In which spirit hee put by the blow with his left hand, and ioyning close to the Horse, pulld him out of the Saddle with the other, not yet letting him escape masterles, but continuing the action, put him selfe in possession of the Beast, and scorning to defile his hands with such poysoning basenesse, thought to passe out his braines, had not feare to die, taught him to counterfeit death to liue: so that *Montano* seeing him sprawle, as killed with the bruse, left him to wonder at the borders of Desperation, and passed on another, in the same rage, making him loose his head for not keeping his Saddle.

But who had seene *Montano* on horsebacke with a Sword drawne in his hand, might quickly haue been destroied: for though his blood wanted either comelinesse or qualitie to grace a manage, was there in him both horsemanship and stoutnesse to beautifie the Beast, wherby the Villanies were quickly dispersed, and Mischiefe complained, her seruants had not well learned the struction: onely *Corsino* learned with the likelihood of successe, & striking *Bustofa Frauisa* chiefe coadiutor, had submitted to his youth & strength

but that *Montanus* vndertooke the quarrell, and with a violent reuerse, deuided the Sword arme from the body; which onely gaue him this notice, Hee might better run away then fight, as hauing two Legges, and but one Arme.

In the meane while *Deltona* freed her selfe of the dead body, and seeing *Francis* panting, another slaine, a third wounded, a fourth armelesse, *Montanus* on horseback, & *Coranus* well, she was well too. Thus is the danger ouerpassed, and the hurliburly appeased; onely *Francis* miraculously recouering was glad to liue, glad to submit, that hee might liue; and in the submission excusing himselfe by the power of loue, which (though as a rival had been cause enough of his confusion) yet because there wanted all those notiues of Iealousie, hee being so vnworthy a person, *Montanus* framed a patience, and left him to the dishonour of the action, intreating *Deltona* to take in worth this poore peece of seruice, and set forwarde with a more emboldning comfort. Nay (quoth shee) feare and discontentments are now to act their parts; My Father therefore and I will surely home, and attende the welcome of better successe; In the meane space, haste you to *Placentia*, and let the truth of the matter blason your credite, and your credite with the circumstances exasperate the wicked deede, that the rest remaining without grudging, and you without blame, This he willed him to do, and this he did, because

fice willed: but Fame of her owne disposition had quickly diuulged the accidents, and one of the parties enlarged in with many circumstances, shewing some property of goodnesse, as if Remorse had bade him first confesse, then be sorrowfull, and last endeuour satisfaction. The truoth of whose report, quickly strook both a feare and hate: For who could not but feare the losse of that beautie, the hazard of such persons, the slaughter which did, and might haue ensued? Who could not but hate the malice put in practice, the manner of the treachery, and the parties, that so serued them selues the slaues of villany.

But when *Placentia* stomaked the disgrace, and that a little meditation had considered on the shame, if such a president might passe without controlment or correction. *Montano* had much adoe to disswade him from present complaint to the *Duke*, intimating, that it could not chuse but he must be made acquainted with the matter by a generall rumour, and if it pleased him to apprehend it as an exorbitant action, without doubt in his wise honour he would take the cause in hand: but if any other humour would suffer his commiseration thereat, then the better course were to suppresse it, considering, iustice in supernaturall pitty had awarded so good a verdict on their side. This modest behauiour of *Montano*, produced more loue, and more regard, more loue for those vertues abounding in him, more regard for that

Wisedome, which knew to put them to gracing vses. All this seemed yet insufficient to his satisfaction, without bringing his Shippe into the safe and desired harbour; wherefore he thought it high time to vnvaile the Maske of his metamorphosis, rather then thus to hazard his soules life, or tyre his owne greatnesse to this course any longer; besides, delay was a kind of torment to his passion; and the feare of being ouer-watched with malicious eyes, bade him dispatch: to which resolution, hee fastned his anchor-hold, and Fortune once againe thus dallied with him.

Deltona is resolued to know what Montanus is, and what shal be the issue of their loue; & so goeth to Marpesius Cane, where she entertaineth Montanus.

Deltona safe at home, thought this safety an exceeding disquiet; yea a very intermixture of torment, considering shee saw so many tokens of greatnesse in *Montanus*, and founde her heart violently caried in the streame of affection towards him, and yet was debarred the happinesse, which her hope flattered to inioy: like a man brought to the delight of a delicate Orchard, and by standing on a Banke ouerlooketh the same with a longing desire of entrance, according to the Gardners promise, and yet is delayed with excuses: Whereupon shee saluted her Father, her rest was vp, and shee would referre it to no other tryall, shee poore mayd still doubtfull, durst not answer to the purpose, but thought by cunning rather to mittigate the violence

violence

lences, then with reason to refell the argument which perceiued by *Deliora* (as if indeed shee could haue welcommed an vnmannerly guest wilfulnesse) shee bade him not trifell, but conclude with effect. Why then (quoth hee) wee will goe to *Marpesias* Caue, as well to be thankfull for the escape of our late perill, as to present our Offertorie, which we haue not yet done; there shall the *Anabresse* warrant your successe, or controll, to a new course. Glad was she of his, glad was hee of her gladnesse: the one allowing any thing might addelife to her desires: the other, disalowing euery thing, might disparage her worth: yet the next day he brought her along, not desisting from a milde passage of speach tending to instructions, by the way.

Montanus commeth to Marpesias Caue, and findeth Deltena.

TO this place (O happy Fortune, that conducted him to this place) did *Montanus* single her out: for as the working of his spirits draue him to pace out his fancie in the fields, hee saw *Corarus* and *Deliora* passe the Grouc toward the Caue; and knowing the limitation of his bonds would be quickly measured: hee very nourrly entred the Sanctuarie, as soone as *Corarus* had yeelded her the freedome of being alone, and in a kind of distemperature betwixt feare and gladnesse, insisted into the roome of *Statyra*, where *Deliora* was officiously disposing her attires. But when shee saw her Deuotion intercepted, and *Montanus* so strangly

strangely audacious, shee neither knew what to thinke, or to say: for her thoughts were at variance betweene Desire and mistrust, and her speach was stopped with amazement; so that shee almost fainted for feare, had not feare in an other nature, least shee might be surprised added life to her fainting. On the other side, when *Montanus* saw the errour of his rashnesse, the first liuelinesse was quite debated, and the conceit at her distemperature, made him checke his folly for being no better aduised; at last finding ouer-shamefastnesse to be more childish then man-like, and that a retreat would rather shew a dempsinesse, then audacitie a fault, he thus framed his treatise of pacification.

My most deare, and dearer then my dearest life; Fortune euer malcuolent vnto mee, hath now taken pitty vpon mee, and weary of her tyranny, brought mee to this place of delight: By Loues chiefe happinesse, I therefore pray thee, make my Hopes legitimate, and my worthily bestowed Affection, the fortunate child of contentment; least you ouerpasse the glory of a strange conquest, which may adde to thy desert, what the greatest thoughts can imagine, and I repent too late for submitting Princely maiestie to the censure of a Shepheards Daughter. Till this, her amazednesse at the accident rather tollerated, then admitted, what was done: but hearing him name a tytle of that consequence, a new ioy quickly reuiued her spirits: like a friend in ambush reuiewing a priuate

" Combat, and seeing some dangerous inequalitie
" rusheth out either to deuide the contention, or af-
" sist the weaker side; this made her thankfull to
" the Nimphs, as if her Orizons had wrought the
propitiation, and accepting it for answer from the
Oracle, (as if she had knowne before he had taken
this counterfeite vpon him) shee replyed.

Little needed *Montanus*, (for in that tide my
" liking consented to *Montanus*) to haue boasted
" of Genealogies, or names of Dignitie: so that (to
" be plaine,) I was euer carryed with the streame
" of Fancie; yet durst I not betray my forwardnesse
" to the violence of Passion, vntill I was assured of
" her respect to vertue, (to whom, seeing my vowes
" haue specially combined mee) be thou vertuous,
" and be *Montanus*, or Prince, or what thou wilt;
" and I shall then loue thee for vertues sake. What
" call you Vertue, answered he, by *Marpasias* Altar?
By the sacred Nimphs, by these starlike Eyes,
(which I will charme with my kisses) I meane
truth, fayth, constancie, marriage, and what soeuer
Deltona would, that I meane: But thinke you I can
liue in this fire vnconsumed, and see this excellen-
cie without desiring? What should you desire?
(replyed shee;) I hope you will not your selfe
destroy your selfe; or affecting my estate, seeke to
diminish my wealth: for if you like me for good-
nesse sake, will you attempt to bereaue me of that
goodnesse, whereby you would like no more?
Farre be it from my frayleft imagination (sayd

Montanus) to prosecute any smister meanes against your owne will: for by this Table of Contracts I sweare, I intend nothing lesse, nor applaud any thing more, then to behold you like a faire Planet in a beautious euening, or a pleasant Plant in a well manured ground. Then (concluded *Delvene*) except inconuinent thoughts, and incongruent actions to honour, and my owne resolutions, vse the benefite of victorie with moderation; and so I confesse my selfe subiected: Yet let me know to whom, considering I determine to challenge the performance, as you enlarged the promise. First, (quoth *Montanus*) be this place, and these *Statues*, witnesse of our League; & Heauens confound the violation of our truce, & maligners of our loues. With that they mutually imbraced ouer the Altar, according to the manner of Contracts; then kissed: and finding it a circumstance strengthening the band of Loue, kissed againe. Then *Montanus* sware to let his desire run no further at randome, then to chast entertainement, vntill conuenience solemnized their Marriage: And *Delvene* protested, no alteration should disinherite her opinion of him. Thus gaue Loue a pleasant vp this meeting, and Sweetnesse seemed glad to be the period of such reciprocall likings. Yet *Delvene* perceiuing the place and opportunitie agreeing to his remembrance, which already procured certaine wanton changes, with a prettie kind of allurement enticed him out of doores;

which hee very carefully yeelded vnto, as well to maintaine her iudgement of his loialty, as to support his owne expectation for the fruition of such inestimable worth.

Heere met they with *Coranus*, who more then astonied at his Daughters being alone with *Montanus*, seemed so confounded, that they verily thought they had done amisse in being authors of his feare: but hee scorning the interception of euery obstacle quietly pacified him, that nothing had passed, wherein Vertue and Honour was abused; nor shall any thing proceed without liberall satisfaction, if a Crowne and Kingdome may counterpoyze her worth. But this troubled him more, as suspecting hee was deluded, till *Deltona* razed out the scruple of Diffidence by making demonstration of his Princely demeanour; and reassured, nothing had, nor should impeach her vowes to Chastity, but death. Well (quoth *Montanus*) I see there are many entries, windings, turnings, and difficulties in this Labirinth of Loue; and my owne Fortune tyreth mee with vnkind meditation; but I will dally no longer then to morrow, if you come to *Placendus*, a strange truth shall direct you into the plaine discouerie of my Story: But mischance once againe, to their better tryall, thus outfaced Delight, and interposed this crosnesse.

Neuer

NEuer did any expresse the conditions of wickednesse in more ample manner, then *Franio*: For first custome made the greatest faultes scarse seeme imperfections, and sinne like a bottomlesse pit (from whence it is easier to keepe ones selfe from falling in, then once salue to recouer out) had already entrapped him: Now a vild suggestion buffed in his peeuish eares, as good execute something to accouer his credite, as he still suspected: yea hated in the soile receiued: then the bond, in which he was tied to his Coadiutors, as if the mischiefe they were brought into begged a redresse and satisfaction: Lastly his owne malice taught him, there was no hope of constant loue, where he wished and determined confusion: So that hammering on the Anuile of Enuie he quickly framed this peece: After many watchings both of *Deltonas* retirings, and *Montanus* actions, it was his chance by *Seranus* attending at the doore of the caue to suppose his daughter entertained there a time of deuotion, whereby he deuised to obscure himselfe, and by reason of a hollow Pine saw vnseene, and to his soules torment heard the kinde parting, and appointment of *Deltona* and *Montanus*, whereupon he went to *Ferona*, where *Duke Regio*, was at this time resident, and rather to satiate his owne reuenge, then for any loue to the *Prince*, he yet made loue the excuse of his reuenge, telling (though fortune helped not his diligence to expresse his duty towards him) hee

Franio betrayeth Deltona to the Duke: with his story at loue to Deltona.

night with like company crowded in the Caues, where the Beasts doe vse to hide, recompence his honourable passion with her moderate Rape: For shee is determined to goe to morrow to *Placentia*, where, and whither *Montano* with vaine promises had inuited her; so that if her pleasure to take horse, or her perfidiousnesse, and his contumacie, it was apparant there was little danger in the attempt, and his Fayth could in nothing so well beseeme, as in venturing life and credite for his sake. But ere the *Duke* entertained this motion, we shall heare the Story from the beginning.

The story of Rugio Duke of Fortona & Deltona:

AFter *Katabasy* had brought the *Tartarians* to subiection, that liue betweene *Caucasus* and the *Caspian*, his valure quickly disciplined them in martiall exploites, and wisdome reduced them to ciuility and state of gouernment, which consisting in nothing so much, as magnificence of a court, and well ordring of Cities, he presently erected after his owne name the mightie *Katabasy* somewhat neere that blind entrance of the *Hircanian* or *Caspian* Sea, and hauing married *Ickassa Queene* of the hether *Scythia* saw the pleasure of many yeeres, and the vowedly best of foe foure: Of whom *Zaiby* as eldest succeeded, and at his time enioyed the prerogatiue of a great age: *Fortona* the youngest had the prouince of *Tuga* as a large *Dukedome* designed, who inducted by the royall example of his father built his

the *Eſtim Fontana*, and had queſtionleſſe made appearance, from whence he proceeded: but that death ſtomaking his ouer boldneſſe of his bodies conſtitution, as promiſing long life, cald him to an vnkind account, and in his manly progreſſe ſhewed the ſtrength of a ſtronger arme, by which occation was this *Eugio* left like waxe fit for any » impreſſion to augment his prodeceſſors glory, or » ſubmit to the vanitie of his youth and liberty: but he, like a diſcreet traueler, that not preſuming on » his owne experience, chooſeth a skilfull pilot for » his iorny, ſelected men of honor and vertue to » manage the affayers of his Realme, with whoſe aſſiſtance he made his gouernment compleat: the hope whereof induced *Buſimorus* King of *Bactriana*, to beſtow his Daughter *Paleſtra* vpon him in mariage, whom though his prerogatiue did not fully grace with the height of Maieſtie, yet being a mighty and abſolute Prince, flouriſhing in the very pride of yeares, and beautified with outward and inward excellencies: her loue and liking ouer-ſwayed further conceite of ambition; ſo that ſhee liued to the great applauſe of the people, and in-diſſoluble reſpect of the *Duke*, the rather, becauſe ſhe prooued a gladſome Mother of many towardly Children, had not a lamentable vntowardneſſe diſprooued her a Mother at all: For quietly trauelling in her hopes to ſee them proſper like men, ſhee was interdicted from making any further progreſſe by the arch-baily of the Earth, who con-

dem-

demaund he was inexorable to his perpetuall mansion, whereby the princely *Despo* had many causes of sorrow, and onely one of comfort in the expectation of her issue, to which he added this covenant, neuer to entangle his opinion with any step-mothers deceit. Thus remaining a widower, and assured of further succession, by reason his sons *Philanio* and *Kastreppi* marched armed in armes before the colours of Honour, hee began to bee careless of a second wife, for that a man indued with externall comelinesse, and other causes of entisement, he might either command a wanton Loue, or make choise of his owne satisfaction, and had he not in this manner ouer-liberally payd tribute to his pleasure, surely both for gouernement ouer others, & many choise accomplements in himselfe, he might well haue beene inserted in the Record, of good Princes: yet this must be alledged, the vice neuer grew so contagious, that it extended to spoile or rauishment, otherwise then as gifts and greatnesse compassed.

In the time of this wantonnesse florished *Delvaro*, amongst the Shepherds of *Naganio*, like an especiall flower in a curious Garden, on whom the " worke man bestowed extraordinary cost and la- " bour. To her amongst others, *Franio*, whether " perswading himselfe to like, or because he would " be thought capeable of some goodnesse, framed a " motion of Loue: but she (as if you had seen a Cup " presented to a man willing to drinke, and perceiuing

uing poiſon in the bottome ſtandeth amazed, and ſo deſiſteth, ſuddenly ſtarted backe, and hiteing for the time an extraordinary ſcorne, aſſured him, ſhe conceiued, that the heauens maligned, and the earth found him burdenſome: with this anſwere, the cumberſome weeds of deſpight quickly choked and ouer-ſpread the fruit of true Loue, and ſo falling backe to his owne inclination, hee preſently nouriſhed a kinde of hate, and hate not onely wiſheth ill, but oftentimes practiſeth means of reuenge; though ſome Politicians more cunningly contriue their buſineſſe, making the outſide a falſe inſinuation, and couertly worke vilainy and deceit: in which humour did *Franio* enter familiarity with *Guleppo* a man very neere the Duke, and for the performance of ſome pleaſing matter of great truſt with him: For you muſt vnderſtand, *Rugio* did not ſo priuately ſatiate his incontinencie, but that diuers according to the libertie of that time, gaue their ſeuerall verdicts: ſome ſaying, ſinne was intollerable in Princes, by reaſon example quickely reduced the people, and the perſons gaue eaſier notice of their imperfections, like ſpots ſooner ſeene in pure linnen, then courſer cloth. Others would not diſpute ſo vehemently, alleadging their actions had diuers Priuiledges, and themſelues were ſacred from reproch: ſome whiſpered; that a ſecond marriage (conſidering his yeeres and abilitie) would diuert his careleſſeneſſe of the common wealth to a more ſuffi-

cient regard: others alleadged his loue to his Children, (leaſt the ſecret emulation of a Stranger might be preiudiciall) detayned him through diuers examples from ſubiecting them to a Stepmother: Some feared the expence of the Treaſure, which muſt needes be too profuſely conſumed in charge of Apparrell, deuiſes, and rewards; others tooke in good part that courſe, becauſe diuers priuate men were inriched, and the mony diſperſed within the Dukedom: Some true louers of vertue (as farre as they durſt) counſelled the retreat to the ſecure fort of Moderation; others framed themſelues to the Princes appetite, nere diſputing who eſteemed them elſe for bace and demiſſe: Of this ſort was *Guleppo*, a man euer about the Duke, and imployed onely for matters of laſciuiouſnes: To him did *Franio* declare the perfections of *Deltona*, and by way of circumſtance, inferred the facility of the Rape, which might queſtionles be effected without infamy, danger, or repining. This brought him to ſecret conference with the Duke; who ſearching no further into the ground of his malice, ſuppoſed the fellow was willing to make a fortune by any courſe, and therefore with reward, for that time diſmiſſed him. But preſently proclaymed a generall Hunting, which correſponding with their Summer Feaſt, made him an eye witneſſe of *Franios* deſcription; and the firſt interuiew ſo pleaſed his apprehenſion, that hee tooke the benefite of the two dayes following; and to

colour

colour his meaning, pitched vp diuers Tents, imparting the beſt of his game with a plentifull hand vnto them; and the honeſt Shepheards imputed his acceſſe to an honourable affability. Now when true Regard had thus ſatisfied his fancie, Opinion (though many times the mother of Errours) did not now deceiue his iudgement, but (as ſhe was indeed) he ſuppoſed her excellent, & without doubt of a better hope, then *Coranus* child. Heere ſome ſecret wrought a ſtrange alteration; for Honour awaked the remembrance of Vertue, and aſſured him, it was not to be betraied to tranſitory vanity: yet loth to giue notice of any diſtemperature, hee commaunded a returne; and one time taking *Guleppo* aſide, vrged him with inuention and endeuour to helpe his Lord and Maſter. But alas (for al his firſt confidence) he ſeemed as a man diſtracted at her admirable preſence, rather then officious, like him, which hauing ſore Eyes, and preſuming on comfort by refuſing his ſolitary Lodge, little knew the Sunne was more obnoxious vnto them) and proteſted hee was neuer ſo ouerwrought in conceit; for he vtterly deſpaired in the ſucceſſe. Yet (quoth the Duke) thou ſhalt carry a Preſent to *Coranus*, & a Iewel to *Deſtona*; which accordingly he did: But as ſoone as his trembling feare had deliuered the meſſage, al impatient ſhe replied. Thou ſubtile enemy to frailty, & bace broker of wantonnes; hence with thy traſh, & aſſure thy careles Maſter of honeſty, that vertue remaineth like an ineſtimable

mable Diamond, which is ſtill a pretious Stone,
" though neuer ſo meanely obſcured, and content
" repreſenteth a ſtrong foundation; whereon lay
" what burden you will, it eaſily ſupporteth it. With this anſwere *Guleppo* againſt his will returned, and the Duke in a manner ſtomacked the contempt, had not the maner of the contempt made him ſuppoſe there was ſome excellencie ſhe ment to keepe him from, which without doubt by the deniall inflamed him the more, and according to the nature of violence draue him without reſpect to goe to *Coranus*, aſſuring him by a Princes faith hee meant no circumuention, but an honourable marriage: this wrought his admittance to *Deltona*, who ſeeing ſhee was to wraſtle with mightineſſe durſt not clogge her ſelfe with ouer many impediments, but with a Sence-rauiſhing Modeſtie appeared, as if ſhee had knowne her owne Metamorphoſis, which ſo inflamed the amourous Prince, that with proteſtation of remaining a kind louing, and conſtant husband, hee perſwaded her to accept of the Dutchy of *Fortona*.

This offer *Coranus* wold haue taken hold of, as thinking it a happineſſe from Heauen, that her Honour ſhould be ſo well preſerued, ſo proſperouſly reintegrated: and a fortune on Earth, that his feares and dangers ſhould at laſt receiue their period; had not her anſwer amazed them both. Although (moſt mighty Prince) it were impoſſible for mee to deſerue ſo great a portion of happi-

neſſe

neſſe, ſo that in all wiſedome I might welcome
the bleſsing, as a donatiue from the Gods : yet
hath a certaine reſolution impugned all thoughts
of mariage, and my Vowes tyed mee to the ex-
pectation of euerlaſting quietneſſe in a ſingle life.
By the ſmall benefite of my Beautie (for which
you haue let looſe the ſtreame of liberall Promi-
ſes) I therefore expoſtulate at your hands, to re-
member your ſelfe, that is to pacifie your Great-
neſſe, from being diſtempered with the denyall of
inequalitie & meanneſſe; if not, then let a hard hear-
ted ſtubbornneſſe aſſure, I wil admit of no motions,
tending to the diſenabling of my poore reſolutions.

Deltona refuſeth to be Dutches of Fortona.

This ſharpe repulſe much diſquieted the Heroick Prince, and confounded the ſimple *Coranus*; yet the manner of her deliuerie, and grace-gracing Graciouſneſſe ſomewhat pacified (though not altered the paſsion : For hee reaſoned, Couſtome had taught Women deniall; and the ſtrongeſt Townes with time and induſtrie were ſubiected: ſo with a kinde of impatient patience he departed. But abſence vſed him more vnkindly then other men, becauſe by often iournies (which the vehemencie of his paſsion occaſioned) he thought Fortune very ſpare; that ſtill inticed him to the inchanting abode of beautie, and allowed him no charme to preuent the perill : hee complained on Loue as tyrannous, that bound his affection to an vnworthy ſubiect, and vrged againſt Nature, for being too too partiall; that ſhee againſt nature

ſhould deſpiſe him with ſcorne, & he (againſt reaſon) ſhould proſecute a matter of ſuch difficultie: ſo that euery thing (for the time) conſpiring againſt him, the violence at laſt conſpired againſt her; either by policie to allure her to the Court, where deliacie and pleaſure might faſhion her to other humours, or by ſtrong hand to ſteale her away: for which purpoſe *Guleppo* for the Duke, and *Franio* for *Guleppo*; and both, as venemous ſpiders in an vnſwept houſe, with induſtrious ſubtiltie attended, and as you haue heard, acted one part of the Tragedie already, which although diuers in a manner complained of; yet becauſe it was a ſtone of the *Dukes* owne rowling, he made onely ſhew of miſlike, neglecting indeed the true vſe of miſlike; ſomewhat diſcouering thereby the errors of greatneſſe.

For men of power in this world ſometime by ſtrong hand beare out the actions of others hauing relation to their pleaſure or profit: ſometime extenuate the fault, & by way of circumſtance excuſe the ſame; like artificiall Painters, whoſe greateſt cunning conſiſteth in the curious ſhadowing of things, though the rich exclaime; and poore reſemble them to flies eſcaping the Cobweb by ſtrength, when the little ones are catched and deſtroyed: ſometime in meere wilfulneſſe they repugne reaſon and perſwaſion, either not perceiuing nor ſuffering other to tell their faults: or vnder colour of ſtate, imagine it demiſneſſe to be attentiue

to each exbrobration: ſometime finding the ſecret of delight to conſiſt in varietie, one vice is quickly let in after another, and ſo the Brokers for the firſt are politickly diſcarded; like Flowers worne no longer then their ſcent laſteth; and new Factors cunningly admitted: ſometime their affaires are managed with *Alexanders* fortune, who ſeeing the Gordion knot too intricate to vntie, ſhew'd the force of a ſtrong arme to vncut. In which maner plaied now the Duke his game; for he embraced the deuiſer of this Plot with gladnes, & put it in practiſe with ſpeedineſſe, ſo that he welcommed the next Sunne in ſolemne interceſsions, not to obſcure his face the day following, & haſted to the ambuſh accordingly, wherein an houres tediouſnes had not detained thē, before *Franio* gaue the watch-word, *Il tempo*, & they leauing their couert ſuddenly ſurpriſed *Coranus* and his daughter, as an vnlook't for tempeſt turneth the ſailes about, when the ſight of harbour cheereth the poore afflicted Sailers. By this means is the Duke in poſſeſsion of his much deſired happines, & ſeeing her aduanced vp before him, cōmanded away; none remaning but the aged *Coranus* weeping, & diuelliſh *Franio* laughing. But who had beheld the beautious *Deltona* in this captiuitie, would haue ſworne conſtancy meant to out-braue miſchance, and an honourable minde was not to be ſuppreſſed with misfortune? For ſhe was not altered, nor much diſmaied, only ſtomacking to be ſo circumuented, in his armes thus ſpake.

The Duke ſtealeth away Deltona.

Traitor

" Traytour both to vertue and Maieſtie, take heed
" of an intent of wickedneſſe, leaſt deuine Iuſtice
" gather all the ſeruants of Reuenge againſt thee,
" as for the leaſt hope to expect any thing, but hate
" and diſdaine; let my ſcorne of thy preſumption
" make thee anſwere; but concerning the thought
" of wantonneſſe, by the euer-reuerenced *Marpe-*
" *ſia*, I ſweare theſe handes ſhall firſt rende out my
" heart, and throw it in thy face. Be not ſo extream,
" ſweet and faire *Deltona* anſwered the Duke, I
proteſt nothing is meant againſt thy chaſteſt wiſhes: be onely pacient and moderate, letting time worke his will, thou beeing willing vnto times working. Thus hee brought her to *Fortona*, and indeed (as if he had knowen her to be the mightieſt Empreſſe of the world) gaue order for her entertainement accordingly.

The Duke ſtealeth away Deltona through Franios miſchieuous deuice, who is ſlaine in the buſineſſe.

NOw playeth Report her part, for mingling certainties with vntrueths the vprore of the Citie, and the muttering of the people, ſhuffled together many and ſtrange opinions; becauſe a ſeldomneſſe of doing amiſſe, maketh ſmall faults wondred at; and the fauour of the partie wronged ſtriketh a compaſsion, which quickly breedeth ſcandall and repining: For how-euer fauour or power may ſupport an vniuſt Action, or protect an Offender from the penaltie of the Law; yet can wiſe men ſee the conniuencie, and the better ſort will exclaime on the partialitie.

This

This appeared in the *Dukes* ſtealing away of *Deltona*; at which ſome murmured, and diuers preſumed to reprehend the incontinencie. Amongſt whom the youthfull *Egerius* Minion to *Philano* the *Dukes* elſteſt Sonne; as if ſome naturall reſpect compelled the remorce, aſſured the *Prince*, that the *Duke* much impayred his renowne to deale ſo violently with ſuch modeſty and goodlineſſe. Peace (quoth *Philano*) be aduiſed in the reprehention of *Princes*; yet becauſe thy vertue is pure without diffuſed compounds, I ouerpaſſe the inuection: and ſeeing thou deſireſt ſhee ſhould be choycely intreated, I proteſt to looſe the beneſite of my birth-right, before ſhee haue cauſe to complaine.

This *Egerius* was ſonne of a Stranger named *Bertoſus*, dwelling in the Citty, whom thoſe attractiue Vertues, which grace Princes themſelues, did ſo accompany, that all men affoorded him their loue and liking; and the *Duke* applaudedhis Sonnes choyce. Thus for the time, was *Deltona* quieted, the *Duke* in ſome hope, his Sonne in ſtrange expectation, and *Egerius* in a kind of repining: But thus is *Coranus* in all deſpaire; as much vexed with *Franios* laughing, as his Daughters loſſe, whereupon hee haſted to *Placandus*, and ſtuttered out the matter to *Montanus*, as though feare had made him forget an orderly methode, yet not omitting *Franios* deſpight, who indeede (ſuppoſing miſchiefe vnſufficient without boſting

of it) followed grinning and clapping his hands: but when *Montanus* had heard him out; like the Kings of Beasts, who once enraged roareth and beateth the ground with his taile, not in the nature of lamentatiō, but because he cannot be reuenged: so stormed hee, and seemed in such manner wrathfull, that the rest trēbled: for without further reasoning, taking onely his simple sheephooke, he flung out of doores and almost at the house met with *Franio* crying, *Deltona* was gon, and darest thou Villaine, (quoth he) triumph in such a losse? with all letting a blow flee at his head; either feare, or the smart; or feare of more smart, made him fall, wherein his cowardly submission discouered the fault: But *Montanus* bade him dispatch, leauing tediousnesse and falsehood: With that, hee began his discourse, had not the other interrupted him, exclaiming; Oh deuine Iustice? Let not my eares be defiled with this wretched breath-broker nor my hands forbeare to purge the earth of such a venemous monster; but let him perish in his own shames, least others bee impoisoned with his infections, and mischieuous life. This hee vttered with great fury, and fury not passing without action, strucke with such quickenesse at his head, that the braines spurted from their broken inclosure: which not regarding, hee hasted toward *Fortona*, and hast encreasing distemperature, gaue him no leisure to meditate on the diffusednesse of his iourney. But when *Coranus* was assured of his depar-

The death of Franio.

ture

ture, he corected his owne slackneſſe, that made no more haſte, conſidering the many ſecrets and ſtrange occurrents, which his onely knowledge muſt diſcouer: where vpon hee followed with ſpeede.

Now what eſtate was poore *Placandus* in, who left alone with dead *Franio*, and ſeeing the Hurly-burly had gathered the Inhabitants together, knew not which way to excuſe the murther, nor durſt beginne any circumſtances, but the plaine truth; which after his reuerent Age had reuealed, and the pittifull ſtory, with an vnkinde ſcope deciphered the wickednesſe, they quickly conuerted all ſuſpition & hatred for *Franios* death into counſell, the ſtrength of comfort, and chiefeſt proppe of *Placandus* life. Why then (quoth hee) am I indeed ruined, that like men, like honeſt men, like honeſt wiſe men you wil accord vnto reaſon; and like friends, yea true-hearted friends, you will not faile in aduerſitie: let vs therefore giue the dead his due Ceremonies, and liue our ſelues in good hopes, that *Montanus* and *Coranus* will returne with glad tydings. But other affaires detaine them beyond expectation, and we muſt haſt to *Fortona*, to know the certaintie.

Finis Libri primi.

77.

THE SECOND BOOKE OF the Historie OF TREBIZOND.

Imprnited at London by W. White,
for T. Downes and E. Dawson.
1616.

To the right Honorable Counteſse of HVNTINGTON.

RIGHT HONORABLE,

BEſides the ſcandall impoſed vpon idle Diſcourſes, there is euer a wanton errour depending of preſumption in the choyce of ſome Patron: ſo that when other men had flattered my owne eaſie ouerwrought conceit to be an aduenturer in the troubleſome ſea of Opinion: I thought it moſt befitting to looke out for ſome handſome props of ſupportation, and ſo haue placed the Daughters in one circle with the Mother: Yea, ſuch Daughters, and ſuch a Mother, that mee thinkes you moone togeather like faire Planets in conſpicuous Orbes; from whoſe influence can proceed nothing, but ſweete preſages: So that hereby you cannot chooſe, but breath with her one ſpirit of happineſſe; and I be cheared with ſtrong aſſiſtance againſt any calumniation.

I pray you therefore pardon this intrusion, and examine my Character no further, then my confidence that so great Honour and Worth, will not dissent from their owne properties, and giue me leaue to wish your merit the Wishes of such hearts, as leape for ioy at the naming of louelinesse and Beautie: To both which, with all other excellencies in your Honourable

ise,

I am truly deuoted:

To. Gainsforde.

The Second Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.

SVch was the haste *Montanus* made after the *Duke*, and *Coranus* after *Montanus*; and of both to deliuer *Deltona*: that you might haue deciphered in *Coranus* the properties of Feare and Hope; his Feare, in the vntying the intricat knots of *Deltonas* fortune: his Hope, that the *Duke* would not degenerate from honour and vertue. And in *Montanus*, of Loue and Anger; his Loue, supposing nothing impossible to be attempted; his Anger, assuring to be compassed, what so euer might be attempted: and thus went hee forward vnaccompanied, vntill *Coranus* ouertooke him entring into the Towne, which they found full of rumours by reason of the accident. This imboldned him to bid *Montanus* stay awhile; for Wilfulnesse repenteth, when Reason openeth the eyes of Vnderstanding, and his Counsell must be the Threed to direct him out of this Labirinth. Counsell how you will (quoth *Montanus*,) so it tende to recouer *Deltona*. Then must you be attentiue a while (replyed *Coranus*;) for strange and dangerous is the Storie. Is it time now

Montanus followeth the Duke into the Cittie to see what will become of Deltona: who is discouered to be an Emperours daughter.

now (answered hee) to tell tales, or to tryfle? No, no: Pleasure and conceites are not sutable to this feare and haste: besides, in matters of necessitie, delay openeth the sluce of Inconuenience. Tush (sayd *Coranus*) you mistake mee much. But O eternall Powers! whom doe my eyes behold? *Bertosus*, loyall *Bertosus*; my brother and deare fellow *Bertosus*? With that, they saluted a comely Old man of the Cittie, who mooued with the first vprore, and like a right Naturalist thirsting after Newes, posted to the Court to be beholding to Truth: for hauing a Sonne named [illegible] of secret respect with the princely *Philane* the first borne of the Duke, hee presumed on his knowledge and credite; but thus intercepted by *Coranus*, whom in thirteene yeares hee had not seene, nor euer supposed to haue seene, as long since seeing the neuer satisfied Ocean swallow him vp, hee was confounded: the strangenesse making them both as strange, vntill the extasie moderated, gaue Remembrance leaue to play her part; then appeared Knowledge and Comfort in full life; and after a second ceremony of kindnesse tuned the organs of Speech to this purpose. But doth *Brizaca* liue (quoth *Bertosus*?) I, if *Trezobere* be preserued (said *Coranus*?) Then hath the Gods mightily fauoured (*Coranus* replyed) *Bertosus*. And miraculously protected *Bertosus*, (answered *Coranus*.) Now was *Montanus* astonied; for these new names, increased new thoughts; and the strange-

Coranus meeteth his brother Bertosus in Fortuna.

nesse

neſſe of the nouelty rebated his firſt heate, diſtempering him with a trembling deſire. Oh (ſaid *Coranus*) now ſhall you heare a diſcourſe of ſome trouble: bee therefore more conſiderate (good *Montanus*) and let *Bertoſus* ſalute thee. With that, a mannerly ceremony paſſed betweene them, vntill *Bertoſus* counſelled to returne to his houſe, where the benefite of Aduice might be thus farre aduantagious vnto them, that the Duke made acquainted with the matter, would queſtionleſſe proceed in a new courſe.

But ere they were entred into a full paſſage of ſpeech *Egerius* all ready enamoured on the excellent *Deliona*, & tormented to ſe another in poſſeſſion of his delight, came home to his father very ſad: yet was he the ſadder for comming home, becauſe ignorant, whom his father accompanied, his determination of ſolitarineſſe ſeemed diſappointed; and but that the gallantneſſe of *Montanus*, as it were naturally attracted a reſpect, his firſt courſe had entertained a further ſullennеſſe: yet being a Courtier, who ſeeme to be the profeſſors of humanity, & indeed arrogate to themſelues the eſſentiall knowledge of curteſie and good manners, but eſpecially induced by ſome regardable appearance, hee ſaluted them with a very good grace; whereby delight it ſelfe ſeemed to play in the greeting. For *Egerius* countenance (not ſo much as down'd with the difference of Sexes) kept an extraordinary grauity, & *Montanus* comely-

neſſe an vnaccuſtomed temperature, which pleaſed *Egerius*, and *Egerius* pleaſed *Montanus*; who demanded many queſtions tending rather to neceſſitie then curioſitie, anſwered without ambiguitie or circumſtance.

In the meane while *Coranus* and *Bertoſus* pated out the very ſecrets of their knowledge, and concluded to participate the ſame to *Egerius*; who having the greateſt intereſt in the matter might remember himſelfe, and remember the Duke, that *Deltona* was farre ſurpaſsing her ſelfe; whereupon *Bertoſus* not without a reuerent contrarietie taking *Egerius* by the hand, thus began. If the Gods had not their Iudgements inſcrutable, and vnited to ſupernaturall powet, a prerogatiue beyonde mans capacitie, wee might ſlightly eſtimate their mightineſſe, and ſtep into preſumption of our induſtry: but becauſe thay will giue vs notice of their all working preeminence, miraculous and ſtrange accidents draw vs to admiration, and that men may be ſubiected, euen the greateſt eſtates feele the ſcourge of affliction: This apparant in the Diſcourſe now intended. For concerning your ſelfe; no longer Sonne, nor *Egerius*, but princely *Trezoboro*. Concerning *Deltona*; no longer *Deltona*, nor *Coranus* Daughter; but priſcileſſe *Brizaca*. And concerning vs no longer the reputed fathers of *Stengalins* children, but loyall vaſſals to the Emperour of *Trebizonde*. With that he vnfolded many intricate circumſtances of

Egerius and Deltona diſcouered to be brother and ſiſter, the Emperour of Trebizonds children.

his

his birth, losse, and fortune; whereby it appeared, that *Egerius* was sonne to the Emperor *Mengrelius* of *Trebizond*, by the name of *Trezoberes*: that *Deliona* was his twin Sister and called *Brizaca*: and *Gorsuna* with *Byrnesius* were brothers, to whose trust the charge of their infancie was committed.

But thinke you, did *Montanus* heare this? or did hee wonder at the hearing? or remayned he silent at the wondring? or seemed hee amazed in the silentnesse? Surely he heard, wondred, kept silence, and was amazed: yet quieted his thoughts, and gaue Time a little scope to play with them, expecting a prosperous euent. But *Egerius* resuming a new spirit to furnish forth his tale, and yet retayning his wonted Affabilitie, replyed: Seeing it hath pleased the Gods thus to make you the instruments of their power, I cannot but engage both either in the difficulce of the pronunciation, or neglect of regard to you, whose honesty, labour and paines, haue made you all so many inconueniencies for our sakes. Yet least the Duke compelling Powe and Wisdome together, yeeld him temperance full liberty (and how much more, but not redresse the misehiefe) I thinke it requisite to awake his sleeping hopes, by sounding the trumpet of strangenes into his eares, & telling that Fortune hath neuer a time ready to indowe with such an alacrity of spirit, and sweetnes of speech, that the hearers promised to themselues, what soeuer the expectation of a Prince could afford by her-

upon the next morning they accompanied him to the court, & *Egerius* saluting the princely *Philana*, was answered as if loue had in sumpathy pleased one another. Then (quoth *Egerius*,) let this loue acquaint the Duke, that a matter of importance is to be discussed, and how I am to impart the circumstance. Heere omitted friendship no part of her dutie; for the willing *Philana* presented himselfe before his Father, and certified their accesse and the cause.

But whether a feare to be preuented of enioying *Deltona* made euery conceit suspicion of her hazzard, or some vncomfortable misdoubt fore-tolde another interest to the thing he vsurped, he quite degenerated from his owne Customes: vntill *Philana* seeing his *Egerius* attend vnregarded, conferred againe with the Duke, and he summoning his Counsell, as if the Common-wealth claimed a redresse, was at last ouer-ruled by them to penfill out his vertue in more liuely colours. Whereupon *Egerius* encouraged, when the day of hearing lifted vp her head to be seen, aduanced his speech and thus vnderstood.

The History of Mengrelius and Kaducki.

AFter *Samarchanus* (most mighty Duke) sonne of *Rhecus*, Sonne of *Demurgus*, the ancient Inhabiter of the Caues of *Sarmatia*, had reduced his people to a ciuilitie by his discipline, and with the example of valour countenanced their courages; hee attempted the Empire

of

of *Trebizonda*, and preferred for prevailing, so relied on their obedience and loialties, that *Calchidos*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Cappadocia* were also subiected, with which renowned, a time of peace afforded him leisure to recompence the time of his paines with the reward of delight. But he apprehending the royalties of other Monarchies, applyed himselfe to immitations neuer desisting, till hee had his Gouernment and Court, a very Nursery of state and glory: for that you might lawfully haue giuen that *Lasthenes* the preeminence, considering the people had the practise and obseruation of glorious things, and *Suberchanus* himselfe seemed a man compleat in all circumstances of prosperitie.

For concerning the gifts of the minde, they were such rare qualities, as contained more vertue in their operation, then shew in the workemanship; yet such work-manship as made a delicate obiect to the eye, and enriched the possessor. His direction in publicke affayres consisted of such parts, that very aspiring mindes rather submitted to him, then soothed their owne ambition: and in his priuate Court the pallace was a receptacle of the nobly disposed, and well enclined attendants, whom neerenesse to the Prince, made rather study for his Honour, then their owne pleasure: His state commanding affection, for moderation of greatnesse, rather then feare for mightinesse of power; yet was his power of such sufficiencie, that diuers Kingdomes were in tributarie

sub-

subiection: His liberte admitted Military exercise and honourable expenses, neither lauish to satisfie a vaine ostentation; nor too sparing, to discouer any defect that way; His goodnes in generall a sufficient subiect to talke of, and in particular so many by-wayes to perfection.

As for Fortunes portion, she distributed it with a plentifull hand, and contrary to her selfe, with a iudiciall foresight: His Territories many and rich, yet none so rich as well gouerned: His Magnificense augmented in goodly Buildings, and costly furniture, yet neither so much respected, as their orderly vse obserued: His Treasure amassed by regardable prouidence without exactions or cruell penalties: not yet omitting, what princely bounty should remember; nor permitting, what powerfull licentiousnesse might inferre: His royaltie beautified with ceremonious pompe and regall necessitie, his happinesse consummate in a glorious *Queene*, towardly Succession, honourable Allies, dutifull Attendants, sure Subiectes, and friendly Neighbours.

Touching the Bodies alowance, the first Parent of the earth boasted in her owne workmanship; for his Lineaments had a decent vniformity, and Fauour triumphed to be seated in Maiestie: His Countenance retained as well an amiable Chearefulnesse, as manly Grauitie; yet neither enclined the one to childish Effeminatenesse, nor the other to secure Exaltation: His Speech was rubr reposed,

sed,

sed, and the manner of his cariage such, as neither shewed any wrested motions of Bountie, nor degenerating conditions of Princely demeanor: and although the continuance of a long age might haue brought her accustomed tediousnesse; yet health corresponded to his lustinesse, and an able body emboldned him to the naturall discharge of his Fancie; so that the greatest were his favorites, & the yong *Russian* Dutchesse *Balutasa* his Spouse. Of whom (most excellent Duke) the curiosest Rhetoricke will rather manifest a willingnesse, then abilitie to speake; and in whose prayses the best sufficiencie will shorten the iorney to her estimate. For in beeing so great a person, her worth appeared the more, (like an illustrious Carbuncle set out to the best purpose, that wee may perceiue how Art can beautifie Nature;) and because a reuerent loue tempered other passions with Reason, shee liued famous to the world, and gracious to *Samarchanus*, ioyning to other blessinges goodly Sonnes, and fayre Daughters; deuided into such couples, that for Men, who might compare with *Kalucki* and *Mengrelius*: for Women, who could match with *Arcabella* and *Pisana*.

These being the choyce fruite of a flourishing Graft had perfected the beauty of this Garden, and made an vpshot to prosperitie, but that the contention for a Kingdome eclipled the glorious

sunshine; and disdaine of partnership in the wearing of a Crowne, ware out the print of blessed continuance: Yet did the life of their Father containe ill will within limitation, and his death make the strife the greater; because it was for such a soueraignety. For no sooner payde *Manuelbunus* his debt to Nature, yeelding to the sommons of not so hasty, as vndaliable a Commaunder, leauing *Baluasa* in sorrowfull mightinesse, his Children in doubtfull expectation, his Subiects in suspition of new troubles, his adioyning Confederats in opportunitie of reuolt, and euery one fearing their owne losse, by the losse of so good a *Prince*: But *Kalucki* through the prerogatiue of his Birth-right, clayned the Diademe; which clayme was yet reclayned by the great working spirit of *Mengrelius*, and partiall affecting loue of *Baluasa*, who imboldned with her alliance in *Russia*, and the *Northen Europa*: but especially presuming on her sonnes vertues; with which he had drawne out the peoples loues to the greatest length, resolued to endeauour his aduancement, so much more graceing him, by how much opinion thought him to surpasse *Kalucki*, not dif-
" fering from our kinde of Cockering mothers,
" which commonly dally with the yongest, & without apparant reason make sometimes their affecti-
on partiall: yet had not her wilfullnesse been caryed with so strong a current, if other stepps had not helped her vp, as some speciall coadiutors, a-

mongst

amongst whom *Corambello* Duke of *Raganda*, *Pa-*
trasse Steward of the Pallace, and *Hardubax* Lord
of seaven Ilands, were men of great sufficiencie.
This made her goe forward, and her forwardnesse
bade him not faint in the proiect; whereupon in-
cited with his Mothers resolution on the one side,
and the glory of the exploy on the other, hee pro-
secuted a wonderfull attempt, and she sommoned
the assembly of estates, vrging many reasons for
the preferring of *Mengrelius*.

But *Kalucki* all impatient at so vnlookt for be-
ginning stood amased, rather sullen with anger,
then affrighted with feare, till at last, the generall
silence (for who durst presume in a cause of such im-
portance) reduced his distemperature to conceiue,
that if the proiect were a matter premeditated,
she then had a faction prepared, and his sufficiency
was doubtfull: But if it were onely a Mothers par-
tialitie, hee supposed by the intimation of Treason,
and the penaltie to depose her Regencie, and con-
tract their Securitie by honorable intimation.
Why Lords (sayd he) shall *Samarchanus* liuing so
well, be now rewarded so ill? that daring not pre-
sume to imagine him the least wrong, you now
goe about the greatest iniurie, by manifest repug-
nancie to neglect his appoyntment, and odious
defamation to disenable his Sonne? And Mother,
(though vnworthy the least letter in so louing a
word) either will it fall out to your shame to dis-
honour so well deseruing a Husband, or to my
reproch

" proch to be vpbrayded with Baſtardie? elſe can
" neither the law of Nature preferre any beſides my
" ſelfe; or of Nations giue ſo much as a colour to a
" younger Brother. But as for you, whom ſtricter
" alleageance combineth to the obſeruation of our
" ſtate and perſon, wherein dare you haſſard your
" ſelues, & ſuffer Iudgement to be abuſed, as though
" you reſpected not, whether the drinke were poy-
" ſon, ſo it be brought in a Golden cupp? As though
" *Mengrelius*, becauſe more effeminate, were there-
" fore more fitte to reuenge your wronges: And
" *Kaluski* (becauſe a peeuiſh Woman, thinketh not
" ſo faſhionable) muſt therefore be diſceiſed of his
" Birth-right? Take heed in time, as yet your Pro-
" uidence may dam vp the fluce of our Iuſtice: but
" if you ſuffer your ſelues to be carried againſt your
" duties; by death I ſweare, no ſubmiſsion ſhall make
" an attonement. Now to you Sir: (an vnpleaſant
" countenance threatning his Brother with a follo-
" wing miſchiefe) remember that Principalitie abi-
" deth no concurrent; and proſecuteth an Enemie
" to confuſion. Beſides, the name of a Traytor, re-
" ſembleth a conſuming Leproſie, which infecteth
" all the body, and leaueth ſcandall to poſteritie.
" Doe not haſſard therefore the benefite of life, by
" vaine Securitie; Nor be ſo beſotted to thinke, that a
" fleeting looke, or bace popularitie can alien the
" loyalties of ſo many truſtie Subiects: But aſſure
" you, I challenge this Empire as hereditarie; thy
" ſelfe for a Subiect, the reſt obedient, and all confe-

derats

derate assistant. Thus somewhat forgetting his first
intent of moderation, hee approached the royall
Throne, and had without interruption ascended,
but that *Ballutasa* interceded, and in this manner
set the fire of Rebellion on a blase.

I deny not but thou mayest boast, as the imme-
diate successor of *Samarchanus*, and wast in times
past reputed as a blessing to a Mother: But doe not
thinke wee are so simple and inconsiderate, that
having the choyce of two seueralles, to admit the
vnworthiest. I doe therefore without euasion or
circumstance, condemne thee for froward and bad-
ly disposed; and coniure these rather to take com-
passion on the prostrate necessitie of the Com-
mon-wealth, then pitty thee for a priuate com-
plaint, seeing those degenerating humours, which
make Princes odious, are already ripened in thee:
the remembraunce whereof hath exasperated
my displeasure, and mooued these to remooue
thee, as preiudicate. Besides, it is the will of
the Gods to aduance a Steward, which may hus-
band their Plenty, and not ruine their Inheri-
tances. How can it then equipage mine Ho-
nour, that the name of a fonde affectionate Mo-
ther, should make mee forget the dutie of a pro-
uident Princesse? Wherefore you louers of
Goodnesse, it is for your sakes, I digresse from
my selfe, and for the common prosperitie I
disable *Kalucki*; considering Obedience is rather
the seruant of Vertue, then titular Dignities;

" which can seldome be incident, where Deformitie
" maketh loathsome. Pride ouermasteth, Heart-
" burning incombreth, and Tyranny threatneth a
" very conuulsion of your gouernement.

But as a forward bitternes might haue aggrauated his disgraces; the wrathfull first borne of this disquietted Queene in impatience made a sudden approach vnto her, and directed a most dange-
" rous blow (for by this time quickneſſe had vn-
" sheathed the blade,) as if the vnpleasing messenger
" of Reuenge meant to proclaime the strange death
" of an Empresse, had not *Mengrelius* waled with
" his owne body, and by securing her, sustayned the
" smart of a grieuous wound; whereby seeing the
" fire was kindled, hee betooke him to his Guards
" and making forward, had the assistance of other
" coadiutors. Now when *Kalucki* perceiued the
" gates of Treason were set open, hee exclaymed
" on the mischiefe, and commaunded the true louers
" of their Prince to performe their duty. Where-
" vpon many set themselues on worke, and the
" place bred rather confusion, then the confusion
" dispatch; so that euery one shuffled vp some action
" or other. *Mengrelius* set Pollicie and Valour on
" worke to extenuate the furie: *Kalucki* counte-
" nanced Rage and Despight to punish the reuol-
" ters: As for the rest; some pressing forward could
" neither auoyde a pitious slaughter, nor keepe
" possession for the body to stand vpright: others
" (vnwilling to be so endangered) were ere the

midst of the hall had shortned their iorney, either in the throng stifled, or by the commers in, compelled backe: Some vsed such weapons for necessity, which in quietnesse were borne but of fashion; others hauing none wrested from such, as could not resist: Some tooke the Pallace furniture, as not regarding how they helped themselues; others made euery thing offensiue, as not caring how they iniured the rest: Some exclaymed on the reuolt, crying, The Gods protect *Kalucki*; others ready to inuocation, wished *Mengrelius* Emperour: Some with vnseasonable wisedome perswade a pacification; others with strange hearts fraughted with Treason, ran away with the violence.

THus was a dangerous vnquietnesse begun with a few mens deaths, which no doubt had ended with the losse of many mens liues, had not *Caramhella*, *Purasse*, and *Hardubus*, taken the cause in hand for the Empresse, and by force ouermastred *Kalucki*; For *Caramhella* rather addicted to *Bellonas* wilfulnesse, then fearing the diuision of the Empire, made yet this feare a colour of his partiality, and so contrined the matter, that *Kalucki* consented to a surceasse of his rightfull claime, and subscribed to a compulsiue deposition: This necessitie conuented, and the day of truce in *Bellonas* Temple ratified these particulars.

Kalucki dispossessed of the Empire by his younger brother Mengrelius: seateth himselfe in the further Tartary.

That *Mengrelius* should raigne during life; but

Kaluckies

*Kalucki*es succeſſors, or him ſealfe ouerliuing to repoſſes the *Diadem*.

That *Kalucki*, and as many as would make forty all of his fortune, after certaine ſummes of mony diſburſed ſhould within twenty dayes depart the territories of the *Empire*, and within twenty houres the Verge of the Court:

That if *Mengrelius* by the benefit of maryage were bleſſed with the effect of mariage, the comfort to be fruſtrate in loſſe of their liues, and the name of a Father forgotten in reſpect of the Male children:

That if *Kalucki* taking notice of theſe couenants infringed, within one yeere conuicted not the deceite, the gouernment to remaine ſubiect to election, and no man culpable to reſiſt any vneſtabliſhed:

That no ſubiect to the *Empire*, ſhould repine at theſe particulars, and the abettors of any couen remaine faultie, as in caſe of high Treaſon:

Thus was *Kalucki* compelled to take his farwell of an ingratefull Country, and diſobedient people: But magnanimity ſhowing rather a ſcorne then a grudging at their diſloialties, left them without ceremony to the reproch of their errors, and poſted to the hope of better fortune, wherein his expectation was not deceiued. For no ſooner abandoned he theſe Confines, but hee was acceptable to other Countries: and the place, which after much variety ſetled his abode was the further

Kalucki ſetled in Tartaria.

Tartary

Tartary, a place yeelding a receptacle for his state and with a strange fortune opening the Gates of the magnificent *Corallo* to his wishes. Heere in short time, hee procured a worthy honour, the Country reioycing, where hee remayned, and the world trembling, whither his fame was dispersed. For honorable industrie increased Riches, Riches amplication, amplication reuerence, and reuerence feare; which though against others engendred hate, yet toward him, was the cause of loue, in regard hee was loth to acquaint them with any displeasing Newes; and they repentious to giue no occasion of misconsiderat neglect, but remained in one vnitie of loue, as hee did in one method of discipline.

When *Menyches* saw his ioy triumph ouer Anoyance, and that hee had leasure to actuate his Ambition, he proclaimed a publike Celebration, as if he meant to make the day of this Peace, a glorious Festiuall, whereby the people were acquainted with vnaccustomed Ceremonies, & confirmed the manner of the State, knowing when to appoynt, and to whom proportion both Honour and respect. This was made manifest, because they solemnized his Coronation with willingnesse, beautified his Pompe with cost, augmented his Triumph with Presents, and diuulged their good Opinion with acclamations. And truly (most mighty Duke) whether he had a desire in him selfe, to make his Renowne Worthy fame of,

Report; or that his Fathers example suborned his industry, hee performed so many things tending to perfection, that every one adored him as a God in the world, and magnified the time as the yeares of true comfort, wherein hee might have tempted the reuenger of all contempt with scorne of alteration, had not remembrance of the Oath to his Brother, and Countenance to *Corambella* dashed our all-overholding conceits: much like an Apill tempest chancing in a moment to the dismay of a Gardner, boasting of a sun-shyning morning to grace his handy worke: this strooke a perseuerance for a time, and did indeed adde an outward countenance of demission: For considering, that in hauing a Wife, the blessing of a Wife was to be quite extinguished, and the name of a Mother a most wretched title in her owne Children, by reason of their murder: Who could but tremble at this conceit, and exclaime on the vnaduisednesse of such enforcement? Till at last, Time the consumer of all things, wore out the print of that feare. Youth, the maintayner of Carelessnesse, would needes haue recourse to Pleasure: Nature, an enemie of Deuises, scorned to be counterchecked with Appointment: Fortune, the Mistris of Alteration, scorned the stedfastnesse of mans Proposing: and Loue, the Father of Fancie, raged to be suppressed with a petuish Promise. Whereupon they conspired in a league, and brought him to the house of Wantonnesse, where he was welcommed

commed according to his worth, and ouer-estee-
med for his wealth and greatnesse. For whether
hee meant to latiate an incontinent liberty, heere
were such, as knew the power of a Princes dalli-
ance; or whether hee meant to limit his affection
to a vertuous choyce, heere were such as secured
chastity with a victorious army of good thoughts;
but when that iudgement was to be giuen, though
his communication extended to variety of disport,
hee onely liked his sister *Arcabella* to their grea-
ter despight; whom fauour for beautie, beauty for
countenance, countenance for comelinesse, come-
linesse for delight, and all for Maiestie, had so ex-
traordinarily graced, that neither kindred interpo-
sed her neerenesse, nor conceit of mischance to
come, rebated his desires, but hee made tryall of
her modestie, and layde downe his Crowne as
the reward of consent: and meet considering that
Emperours make no Prentishipp of their Con-
tracts, without delay or nicetie, tooke hold of
opportunities hayre top.

Mennelius marieth his sister Arcabella.

Thus was the Mariage happily concluded, and
speedily celebrated with glorious Triumphs be-
longing to state, and stately continuance appro-
priate to Kings. So that *Balinteja* as a gladsome
Mother reioyceth, and *Arcabella* as a happy wife
is comforted, till requited with an husbandly duty;
and making shew to the world of an irrecouera-
ble losse by her liuelesse Wombe, an vnkind re-
membrance checked her lollity, and afforded oc-

"casion to others in this manner to descant: What
"meanes *Mengrelius* now, to performe the cove-
nant so vnnaturally graunted? or violate his oath
so dangerously made? Shall an Emperour be a
bloody executioner of his owne Childe? or a
Tyrant ouer his Country? Must *Trebizonda* be
reproched for immanitie, or reprooued for perfi-
diousnesse? Can it stand with naturall pietie to de-
stroy faultlesse Infants? or regardable Honour to
"tryfell out so strange a composition? Surely Con-
"tent repineth at the inequalitie: For either shall
"*Kalucki* haue occasion of new Warre, or a wret-
ched Murder continue an old Peace.

Mengrelius killeth his first Sonne.

NOtwithstanding these doubts, though *Ar-
cabella* might haue made him a ioyfull Fa-
ther, yet he ere nine howers: caused her to
be a sorrowfull mother. For the Child was marked
to the house of death, as soone as the birth gaue
notice of his sexe; which done, vnkindly pacified,
Arcabella vnderstood it must be so: and the too
late repenting *Baluesa* was allured it should be so.
Thinke not yet any outward Maske so obscured
the continuance of sorrow; but many perceiued
the Emperours allacritie dulled, and the very life
of the Court discouraged. As for *Arcabella*, whom
delicatenesse made more subiect to griefe, griefe
manifested in her the effect of griefe, sadnesse, and
teares, which by reason of neglect, resembled Spots

made

and obiect the ruth of an vnlucky hand on a white
wall; Or vnluckily staines disgracefully chan-
cing to some pure Linnen: nor was this vngentle-
nes so satisfied, but enforced as many sighs as teares,
and praeps as sighes, with whose violence the heart
had broken, but that the spirit driuen as farre as
the passage of the mouth by the life of the tongue
procured some ease.

O infinite powers (ad she) whom the frame
of heauen, and the wonders of the world compell
to acknowledge, can you seeme so inexorable, that
after so many & forcible intercessions, I yet am de-
stitute of reliefe, and subiect vnto all wretchednes
and opprobry. For is not the glory of my progenie
raced, when the benefite of hauing children in the
hauing them is disappointed? Who else lamen-
teth not, when this blessing is wanting? Who else
complaineth for enioying the prerogatiue? Better
had it been, that I had neuer been the louing child
of a happy mother, then to be now the vnhappy
mother of an vnfortunate child; whom impartia-
all Destenie hath not only denyed, but an vnna-
turall Father delightfully murdered. Murdered?
yea too too cruelly murdered; yet witelesse and im-
patient? To complaine of my Emperour must pro-
ceed from passion; for he is bound to honorable
stricte. I am subiect to duty and allegence:
To complaine of Fortune, will detect more
weakenes, for she disdaineth with carelesnes, and
is inconsiderate in her fauours: To complaine

" against the Gods is execrable to them, framing all
" things to good purpose, and we vniframing them
" to bad appetites. What shall I then doe? cast
" ouer the account againe, and then euen I, hapleſſe
" *Arabella* muſt support the burden of this horror;
" I conſented to diſappoint the firſt borne of his
" birth-right, and am now reuenged with my firſt
" borne liues right; I infringed the law of nature;
" and am now tormented againſt the law of all na-
" tions, and am now remedileſſe becauſe my deſpe-
" rate abortiue, and am now without all excuſe. For I
" was an Actor in *Rodrics* tragedie, and muſt con-
" continue an agent in *Heroelius* miſeries.

" Theſe broken ſpeeches had not their paſſage in-
fullneſſe, for *Sabina* her *quondam* Nurſe preſſed
with dutie and care ouer-watched, and ouer-heard
her diſtemperature, and for feare thee might haue
burdened her tender heart with to ſore ſorrow,
diſcouered her ſelf, and thus preſumed to try whe-
ther counſell and comfort had made a league to-
gether. Leauing (*moſt peerleſſe, and long I hope*
" *continue moſt peerleſſe Princeſſe*) to attaund your
" griefe either with as much griefe, or more reaſon,
" I hope my former vndiſſembled zeale ſhall iuſti-
" fie, that the imparting of your ſorrow hath deui-
" ded the ſame, wherfore I thought it part of my
" dutie to indie for redreſſe, which (as I
" hope haue conſented vnto in this anſwer. Let
" iourney bee made to *Delphos*, There will the O-
" racle either diſanull the vnmerciful cenſures, as
" ouer-ruling

observing by divine resolution, or ratifie the »
truthe, as a distributive iustice in revenging abu- »
sive wickednes in after ages: by the one must *Ka-* »
ritta permit the composition, as unreasonable, by »
the other *Mengrelia* maintaine it, as prodigious, »

This was well liked of *Arabella*, that present ioy chased away the intrailes to health, griefe and dispaire, nothing resembling sadnes, with whose helpe beautie appeared more lively colours, and so hee hasted to the *Emperour*, whom finding at leisure, or causing other affayres to tarry her leisure (after long debating of the matter) she con- »
fessed to her opinion, yet for a while she was vn- »
answered by his musing on the successe: resem- »
bling a man ready to taste of an inchanted Cuppe, »
who so proprietie by shedding or losing the drinke »
wauereth a chaste or dissolute wife: and reaso- »
ning thus, what do I now attempt; If she be found »
constant, it is no lesse than I expect: If incontj- »
nent, it is that I would not know: without doubt »
I will therefore make no such triall: but in this *Mengrelia* kept not correspondencie. For
though he impugned the iourney by many argu-
ments, yet at the last he promised *Arabella* to go
in person, and sealing the couenant with an amo-
rous kisse dismissed her, to entertaine a greater de-
light, and applyed himselfe to the conuenient dis-
patch of the Progresse.

Stay a while (my *Egerist*, quoth the Duke) and
let vs die in cold bloud, what aduenture hath enforced
this

this hurliburly in the Cittie. With that they might heare the Alarum-bell of the Hauen-ring cast, and a Messenger discouered King Cahir approch; whom a strange accident had drawn to the Hauen and the neither Contagena, the dispatch whereof and nearenesse to the place where the Duke his Nephew was reziant, gaue libertie to a relation of [illegible] and thus necessitated his accesse to [illegible]

The hystorie of Xantippus and Encelidon.

IN the setled time of King Cahirs gouernment, the neither Contagena was famous for the Kinde Gozzec, playing the vantombet with the Pallaces of the Lords Cusanach and Sultimus, whilst at you see a Messenger bring glad tydings to one, and to returne to another; ran through a pleasant valley to Cusanach, and backe againe to Sultimus; proportioning both the sides of a Peninsule, with a current of 15. Leagues. For first, it went forward with iollitie to the East, and then (as if it had beene proud of some good Newes) with a stately compasse (least too short turning might hinder his good speed) whirled backe again to the West; and by often recourses at last acquainted the inhabitants with the birth of two sonnes: two sons famous to the world for Natures first life; famous in the world for liues strange glory; famous from the world for lones vnmatchable continuance, which made death [illegible]

For as the worke finished in them both shewed

but

but one person in both, though parted in motion: so the mindes of both grew with their bodies to a *Sunpathy*, and resembled sweet musicke made by the well tuning the strings, onely their names accorded to this difference, that *Cusanach* taught *Xantippus* the dutie of a sonne, and *Soltimos* shewed *Encelidon* the affection of a father: and surely how euer greatnesse breedeth many times contempt, the secret enemy of conuersation, and absolute hinderer of former amitie: yet heere did the fathers liue without grudging, and the sonnes proportion their affections accordingly; as not debarred by the distance of their dwellings from counter-changeable meetings, and inseperable familiaritie, in eating, lying, liuing, and louing together; keeping time in their actions, as if they had determined to conclude some woonder of friendship in the world, and indeed appeared like Twinne-brothers of one mother; both in habite, fashion, demeanour, and what circumstances soeuer may make any thing like another: yea, it grew to that rare and admirable effect, that when *Xantippus* had with strange conflicts resisted his passion, least the loue of *Eucasta*, beautious *Eucasta*, and in being beloued of *Xantippus* fortunate *Eucasta*, should deuide the loue of his friend, he yet continued the same *Xantippus*, and would not permit *Encelidon* to depart from *Xantippus*, nor could indeede *Encelidon* digest any thing, but what liked *Xantippus*.

AT last Fortune despighted to behold such a mirrour of immutability, bribed the sonne of *Venus*, (as the Poets vse to sing) to sow the seedes of Diuision; which how euer they rooted, were sprinkled in *Encelidons* heart, and began to spring forward, as sweetned with the graces of *Eucasta*, which like the transluent beames of some fayre Planet, shewed tokens of admiration, rather then knowledge: so that *Enceli-don* could not but loue *Eucasta*, *Eucasta* could not but like *Encelidon*, because hee was like *Xantippus*, and *Xantippus* loued *Eucasta* the better for liking *Encelidon*; till the controuersie grew betwixt a pasion ouerruling Reason, and true Friendship ouermastring Idle humors: But when *Encelidon* perceiued no way of comfort, but by beeing a traytor to *Zantippus*, friendship preuayled, and hee chose rather to die, then to be found disloyall; so that after many circumstances of discontentment, hee would haue killed himselfe, had not the working of his spirit compelled the tongue to intreat Death not to be too too cruell; by which occasion with the fortune of ouerlooking his demeanor, *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the errour of *Encelidon*, and *Encelidons* distraction exposed both feare and trouble: yet the admirable innated loue expelled the combersome enemies of his quiet. Ielosie and Mistrust, and by way of kindnesse, hee expostulated with *Encelidon* the cause of his griefe, distemperature, and now despe-

rate

rate attempt: But as you see a guiltie man disconsolate with the iudgement of Conscience and Law concluding his finall end: so stood *Encelidon* hauing nothing to answere, but amazing lookes, and a deiected countenance, wherein *Xantippus* might read the mischiefe pretended, and by his abashed vnwillingnesse to reueale, found (and at last compelled him so to confesse) the first discouerie to be true.

Encelidon had no sooner cursed the day of his Birth, Fortune, Loue, Heauen, Earth, and Hell, that thus had conspired against his Fayth; but faynted with remorce, and as if he would plead the defect of Nature, not Malice, fell downe in *Xantippus* armes, and bade him not spare to ridd the world of such a wretch. But hee in a strange contrarietie comforted him with preuention, and that there was nothing remediesse; yea coniured him by all the names of life, manhood, setled loue, inseperable contracts, and what else a sweete oratory might inferre, to rayse vp his spirits; and if need were, not to desist: For although his infamy and dishonor must leaue a scandall to *Xantippus* in his partialitie; yet what would hee not doe to saue the life of *Encelidon*: Cheare thy selfe therefore, and onely change the name of *Encelidon*, and *Eucasta* can know no other, but that thou art *Xantippus*: For *Xantippus* onely can discouer, who is *Encelidon*. Bee not dismayde, I prise thee at a great rate; and rather then *Encelidon* should miscarry, *Xantippus*

will be without *Eucasta*. Heere grew the contention betweene them to some vnpleasant particulars; the one pleading for Death, the other scorning euery thing but his Friends life: At last perswasion, some reasons, and *Xantippus* enforcement, compelled him to take the name of *Xantippus* vpon him, and so the loue of *Eucasta* ouercame his feare, and brought him to reape the Harueſt of his strange desires. But when Loue came to florish his Colours, (Oh pardon the fortune and errour of Pasion) how could those beauties appeare? How could those sweet embracements continue? How could that euer burning impression remaine in stilnesse, and hee not be thankefull to successe for the same? Yet fly Friendship from sight of this treason. For *Encelidon* like a man rauisht fell senseleſſe in the armes of *Eucasta*, and *Eucasta* confounded at *Xantippus* extasie, striued to helpe, and helped when shee knew how, though shee little knew whom; till at last (as no extremitie can last) *Encelidon* recouered some life, & with passionate teares shewed tokens both of trembling feare, and enraging desire: but pittifull *Eucasta* wretched in the ignorance of her *Xantippus* distemperature, accompanied him with a sadder weeping. Now when *Encelidon* saw to what straights hee had driuen his Barke, and that the delight of his soule was disquieted with the errour, all impatient hee discouered hee was *Encelidon*, and not *Xantippus*; leauing out no circumstance, which either might reueale his

loue,

loue, or publish the glory of his Friend, beseeching her to loue him nere the worse for taking this course in her loue; nor *Xantippus* the lesse for louing his friend; nor her selfe for being beloued of *Encelidon*, who had once made choyce of death, had not the loue of *Eucasta* perswaded life, and *Xantippus* commanded, that *Encelidon* should liue. But alas, *Eucasta* durst not trust her owne sences; she heard the voyce of *Xantippus*, she saw the shape of *Xantippus*, she felt the motions of *Xantippus*; onely he sware he was *Encelidon*. Some times she feared a pollicy to try her weaknesse: some times her feare accompanied with Ielosie, that *Xantippus* mistrusted her Constancie: some times a pretty kind of anger sware to *Xantippus*, this was too great vnkindnesse: some times shee entreated him to desist from this circumuention: and at last on her knees coniured him by the secrets of her loue, to loue his *Eucasta*, to bee her *Xantippus*, and suffer *Eucasta* to bee nones, but *Xantippus*: till *Encelidon* added the oaths of the sunne, and by other circomstances of more particularitie brought her to the right path of vnderstanding, that shee was resolued it, was *Encelidon*. This awhile her patience forbare to stomach, and loue to her Husband forbade to discouer: But as when you see the Fire put out by supposing the Ashes to couer and hide the same, and yet the next day some Sparkes of life are remayning by

« by remooving their Veyle. So fared it with *Eu-*
« *casta*, shee wisely raked in her Discontent with the
« coldest Embers shee could, till Misfortune brought
« her to tosse them abroad, and then appeared, that
the fire was not quite extinguished; that her con-
ceite was not altogeather eased, but stomaching
more and more to be so betrayed, shee acquainted
her mother *Iugeroth* with the History from the
beginning: A woman of that working spirit, that
if the Country had affoorded meanes of setting
Ambition on worke, shee would haue scorned the
name of a Subiect: A woman so imperious in her
will, that no action was vnattempted, nor after
the attempt vndetermined, which might add wings
to her desires, though sometimes they tended to
lasciuiousnesse: A woman of that implacabilitty,
that once subiect to the error of mislike, before she
would admitte of remission, she dared discouer
an absolute mallice: A woman of that apprehenti-
on, that the least abuse was an indignity to her
house, & then followed a prosecution of reuenge:
This appeared in the discourse of the fearefull *Eu-*
casta; the memory whereof stroke such impres-
sion, that the impatient *Iugeroth* without care of
Conscience in plaine tearmes vrged the Murder
of *Xantippus*, and to be effected by the hand of *En-*
celidon: nor desisted shee from reason and argu-
ment, as the breach of Honour, the hate of her Hus-
band, continuall heart-burning, secret mislikes, the
discouery abroad, and the renowne of the reuenge,

as

as if because the body was distempered through the paine of the Head, no other remedy serued, but to bereaue it of his capitall member without further search of redresse.

To this was *Eucasta* soone perswaded, as supposing her honour and renowne ecclipsed, yea broken in pieces, and so suffered her loue to receiue the same foile: besides (as it were inforcered, with her mothers deuillish Impostures) shee was the lesse carefull of her duety, & therfore dared to reason with *Encelidon* to the same purpose; yea some-times to *Xantippus* instead of *Encelidon*: For but by their names she neuer could know one frō an other, who seemed to diuert her from such immanitie enforcing some arguments, though to little purpose, whereby if the feare had continued, hee might indeed haue suspected his friend, but the worst part of such a conceit was quickly cut off by the hasty (and peraduenture vnlook't for) comming of *Encelidon*; who once againe prostrated his open breast to *Xantippus*, and bade him not spare to rid the world of such a recreant traytor, whose wauering loialtie was subiect to so many temptations; with that hee went on in the strange discourse of his murther concluded by his wife and her mother; which with many protestations he disclaimed, and proceeded so farre, that after *Xantippus* had denyed to entertaine the least thought of suspition against him, he stabbed himselfe in many places, till preuented from the full ef-

fect

feet of his furie, *Xantippus* was enforced to a new course; at last his helpe brought recouery and encouragement seemed a reconciliation to the eternall strengthening the bond of friendship. But *Encasta* all impatient at *Encelidons* slacknes, and more then perswaded, how *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the fault, presently fledde to *Mastricot*, wher after a pithy intimation of her disgraces, & the wrongs offered her fathers house (to which her mother added forceable reasons) shee raised a strong partie, and determined to repaire by force of Armes, what her slender policie (as she tearmed it) had almost ruined: so that *Xantippus* was compelled to stand on his gaurd, and (when he perceiued, how he which only lyeth at defence helpeth himselfe but a little withdefence) after to make an offensiue war. To this *Encelidon*, and the house of *Soltimos* was auxiliary, and the two friends gloried in their constancie, and cared not who stomaked the successe of their businesse: till at last the many slaughters and distractions of the Prouinces pleaded for redresses and king *Zalby* was compelled in person to come into *Comagena*, to limit or restraine these mischiefes: yet wrought his presence no other attonement, but the surceance of the warre. For *Encasta* (or *Ingeroth* in her daughters behalfe) would not hearken after any reconciliation; and *Xantippus* denied to be diuided from *Encelidon*, because *Encelidon* concluded neuer to be seperated from *Xantippus*.

This

THis was the occasion of king *Zalbys* comming to *Fortona*, at such time as *Egerius* related the Historie of *Mengrelius*, whereupon they all dissisted from the worke in hand to attend the Duke who made it a matter of respect and specialitie to remember the Kings worth, as being his Vncle in blood, and father for directions and corroboration in his estate; whereupon the Officers of his Houshold omitted nothing, which belonged to the state of his person, & the dignity of the present Court. Thus is King *Zalby* feasted, and much satisfied to be so magnificently feasted: thus is the Duke established in the strengthening amitie of such a mightie Prince: thus is *Deltona* cheered, that no action of *Rugios* ouer-passed the limmits of moderation: But thus is *Montanus* perplexed, as confounding desire & distrust together: at last the Duke imparted to the King all the circumstances of his loue & Rape; of *Deltonas* demeanor & contempt; of *Egerius* complaint & discourse; which the King (because he had bin long since cursorily made acquainted with *Kalucktes* banishment, & *Mengrelius* aduancement) desired to heare at large: Like a man tasting on delicates, who more longeth to fill his stomach after the proofe of the sweetnes, then before: whereupon the Duke soon conferred with his sonne *Philano* concerning the matter, who as soone certified *Egerius* of the Kings pleasure, who as soone consented to obey the pleasure, and dispatch the matter, wherein he thus proceeded.

King Zalby commeth to Duke Rugio to Fortona.

Engerius proſcenteth the Hiſtorie of Mengrelius.

THe great Eye of heauen *(moſt mighty Princes)* had not fully viewed all the parts of the earth, nor time chaſed with ſuch ſwiftneſſe the courſe of the yeere: but that the fruitfull *Arcabella* once againe gaue notice of her pregnancie, and ſignified to the world, ſhe was borne to be a mother, what Diſaſter ſoeuer went about to diſappoint her; which only haſted the *Emperors* iourney forward; who ſetting on worke all the parts of his thoughts made a hundred ſeuerall faſhions of one piece. Sometimes with more quickneſſe then good ſpeed, running ouer all the courſe of former occurrents, with a certaine heart-breaking at his Brothers exile; but ſurfetting on that diſh, hee loathed the dyet, and choaked himſelfe with the delight of principalitie; next hee remembred the contract, whereof the very terrour made him abaſhed to thinke, in what madneſſe it was ratified then, and with what remorce repented now: anon hee conceited how his ſubiects were affected, if either the murther of his children ſhould continue, or the breach of ſuch inhumane couenants be attempted; afterward hee reaſoned, why *Arcabella* importuned this trauell; and laſt of all, whether the ſentence ſhould be reputed Canonicall: But the feare of that diffidence extinguiſhed at the firſt puffe the flame, and yet gaue light to goe forward in the other path; as if there were as much neceſsitie to propitiate *Apollos* diſpleaſure, as to determine his owne affaires:

affaires: whereupon hee ſent out Commiſsions, for the artificiall houſing the Sea; and defenſiue furniſhing and rigging his Nauy; in which the benefit of a Sun-ſhining morning (nothing then practiſed but honourable neceſsitie) without further delay embarked him, and time (not much intermingled with ſtrange occurrents) brought him at laſt to ſafe harbour.

Thus prooued this Voyage proſperous at Sea, and was not altogeather ominous at Land, becauſe *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* truly aduertiſed of the Emperours comming, and the cauſe, found it a matter of ſmall ſuſpition, and therefore made an honourable Welcome, a forward Spring of his owne greatneſſe, and a very life of *Mengrelius* hope: But when his brother *Miſocrapus* and *Apollos* Prieſt had returned anſwere, hee would attend the Emperour at *Delphos*, not doubting of auſpicious ſucceſſe, hee ſeemed rauiſhed with gladneſſe; and in that poynt of extremitie onely affoorded occaſion of ſuſpition, as when we ſee a ſodaine Storme immediatly ſucceed a glorious Heate: yet durſt no man make ſuch interpretation, becauſe the Art of Deuining was peculiar to the Prieſtes. So the Emperour went forwatd, and had *Scalitorax* company to the Towne; where he found the reuerent *Miſocrapus* ready for his conduct to the Oracle.

The description of Delphos.

THis *Delphos* had the report of others illustred, and the rareneſſe of it ſelfe made admirable: in reſpect the place was ſupported by the euerflouriſhing *Pernaſſus*, which ſeemed glad to be the foundation of the Buildings; but ten times glad, that it reſembled ſome Bulwarke to ſecure a treſurie; and yet it appeared more beholding to Nature then Art: For the cragginſſe of the Hill reſembled a very net of Rockes, as if the Stone and Earth were layde countercompony togeather: next the paſſable wayes were ſo many, and hemmed to croſſe turnings meeting one another, that it made a confuſed Laborinth. Laſtly, the entries into mighty Caues, repreſented ſo many Dores of the houſe of Darkneſſe; and by the many changes of Lightnings, Thunders, caſting vp of Stones, Sulphur, flaſhings, filthy ſtenches, and ſuffocating Dampes, ſeemed the very entries of Hell; which *Xerxes* made proofe of by looſing foure thouſand men in going about ro robbe the Treaſure, and *Brennus* Duke of *Gallia* experimented, when hee proſecuted the like theft: Contrariwiſe, all peaceworking gentleneſſe, and ſence-pleaſing ſweetnes welcommed the neceſſarie commers, and liberall Benefactors.

On the topp of this Mountaine was the Oracle erected; a place beautified with the coſt of Kings, & venerated by the acceſſe of chiefeſt Monarches: for therein none might enter, but eſpeciall Prieſts, religious Princes, and ſtrange Embaſſadours.

Concer

Concerning the Monument it ſelfe, Fame confirmed it a Temple vnmatchable; and Time deſigned it the Paliace of *Apollo*, allowed both for an honorable dwelling, and a conſecrated Sanctuarie: the ſubſtaunce whereof it was compounded, made ſhew of a coſtly Marble, and the forme it retayned, ſeemed a ſpatious Goodlineſſe, ſtaying the eyes of the beholders with varietie of obiect; wherein the Workemen had ſo played their partes, as if indeed they had determined to make their memories immortall. For *Agamedes* and *Trophonius* the ſuppoſed Artificers, are for this cauſe, made famous: It was well Leaded on the top, ſtrongly bard with Iron, vnuſually windowed with Iaſpar, mightily vnderpropt with Pillars, ſubſtancially roofed with Cedar, ſurely lockt to keepe their Treaſure, and cunningly encloſed for obſcuring their Secrets: the inſide allowing more daintineſſe, then the outſide goodlineſſe; and both vnited to be a ſcence-rauiſhing Miracle: and the trouble to others aroſe from conceite, rather how it was finiſhed, then in the labour to them, which concluded it. Round about were Trees planted, in which did alwaies Oyle burne; Houſes eſtabliſhed to lodge the companie, and Veſtries appoynted for the ornaments of the Sacrifice. At the Doore ſtoode an Idoll, which they did kiſſe: a hollow Truncke, in which they did offer, and a Lauatorie to waſh in. Within hunge a ſiluer Bell to be rung, ſtoode a perfumed

Lampe to be ſtird, and a golden Altar ſupporting a maſsie Image, before whom they muſt kneele.

The Prieſtes were the firſt which apparrelled themſelues, opened the doores, ſweethed the roomes, bedecked the Tables, brought out the Rellicks, hung the walles, furniſhed the pillars, ſpread abroad coſtly Carpets, ſet out their Iewels, trimmed the cup-boards, and entertained the Embaſſadors. After them other Officers and Attendants were to celebrate a tryumph; and laſt of all, the parties approached to receiue their anſweres, which were ſometimes diffuſed & obſcure; ſometimes ambiguous or *Amphibologies*; ſometime briefe and very peremptorie; ſometime true, certaine, and enlarged.

Now is the *Emperor* magnificently entreated, and orderly inſtructed; whereupon hee lodgeth his Retinew, watcheth his Nights, ſhaueth his haire, apparelleth his body, approacheth the Temple, waſheth his hands, offereth his preſents, kiſſeth the Idole, knolleth the Bell, ſturreth the Incenſe, alloweth the Orizons, beginneth his Sacrifice, ſtandeth his Circles, and marketh the coniuration; which began with terrors and darkneſſe, vntill two burning Tapers ſuddenly flaming by the naked ſide of the Image, diſcouered the wonders of the Chappell, and made him attentiue to heare the vnliuing maſsineſſe diuulge the pleaſure of the Gods. This finiſhed, the reuerent *Miſocrapus* (in his Prieſtly habite) drew the ſtately

trauers

trauers before the Altar, and with a ſadde demeanour preſented himſelfe to *Mengrelius* more ſadder, kneeling vpon the ground, til the holy Prieſt faſtned an enameled Tablet, to a twiſted ſtring of blacke ſilke and gold, putting it ouer his head next his bodie, and departed awhile with a ſilent bleſſing, leauing the *Emperor* to the diſpatch of the Ceremonie, but the Attendants of the Pallace, brought *Mengrelius* ſolemly foorth to his companie, who as ſolemly welcommed him, and ſo they tooke leaue of *Miſocrapus*, & returned to the Citie of *Delphos*, where *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* expected his aduenture.

By this time either feare or furie haſtned his departure to his ſhips, wherein he quickly diſpoſed himſelfe, and without other interception, then the tedioufneſſe of the iourney, came in ſafetie to *Trebizonda*, where each one imparted the manner of the Voyage, and made this diuiſion of their diſcourſes; ſome amplified the deſcription of the places ſeene; others the diſcouery of the wonders heard: ſome tooke occaſion from thoſe changes the Sea afforded; others made remonſtrance of what each countrey maintained: ſome ouer-paſsing what was impertinent, diſputed of the hill, and the Oracle; others more curious intermedled with the Sacrifice and the Orders, which not admitted to behold, they were therefore more deſirous to vnderſtand: ſome preſumed to aske how the *Emperor* was pleaſed, and others dared to enquire,

whether

whether the Common-wealth should be disordered: but the fearefull *Mengrelius* made his accesse to the Court, an astonishment to his Nobles, and a heauie welcome to *Arcabella*: they sorrowing his answere was frownes: and she trembling his salutation was a command out of presence, who accustomed to no other disposition then obedience: displeasingly dutifull accorded to the hard doome, and lowringly impatient effected his will.

But vnkindnesse had not thus her period: For *Mengrelius* finding the Oracle to threaten his destruction, in the Beleefe grewe so impatient, that the promises of comfort, and sweetnesse of counsell seemed irksome, scarse abiding to heare of redresse, and absolutely denying to discouer the reason: resembling him, whom crueltie bereaued
" of his principall member the tongue, because hee
" had nothing to talke of but wofull lookes, nor any
" thing to discouer, but soone mooued displeasure, which astonished the beholders, who yet desisted not to pacifie his trouble, and beguile his passion: but he despighted to see any inclination to delight, and perceiuing his actions were so generally marked, retiered himselfe, and was only humorons in the worst part of melancholy: at last the extremitie draue him cleane out of doores, and made him eccho in the fields, what he durst not wispcr in the Pallace.

O Gods (quoth hee) what auaileth life, if to liue be worse then death? What profiteth honour

when'

when the ſhame of deiection ſhall extripate the glory of former credite? What benefite in a Crowne, when euery dramme of golde muſt bee ballanced againſt a hundred of cares? What preeminence in the title of dignitie; when confuſion ſhall make ridiculous dignitie, titles, and preeminence? O Fortune! O falſe Fortune! Well may we call thee blind, when thou ſtrikeſt thoſe who offered no wrong; and fawneſt on him, that deteſteth thy fauours. Well may we call thee vncon-ſtant; for if by chaunce a Morning manifeſt thy ſmiles, yet ſhall the ſame Euening detect thy malice. Well may we call thee deceitfull, ſeeing thy pleaſures are like the waters of *Alphaſtus*, ſweet to the pallat, but poiſon to the ſtomach. Well may wee call thee a tyrant, for thy hate is implacable, and thy reuenge inexorable. O Sun whoſe glorious beauty is the life of all creatures, & comfort of the earth; what comfort can I haue, that muſt bee depriued of thee dying, or deſpighted with thee liuing; and ſo hath my prognoſticated diſcomfort aſſured? O walkes of ſolitarineſſe, how agreeable onely are your ſhades to my paſſions, had your trees ſable barkes, and your boughs blacke leaues? For the heauens haue conſpired, the earth conſented, and hell it ſelfe concluded my deſtruction. Why then baſe Dieties, iniurious Fortune, vnprofitable Sunne, and vncouth Deſerts; ſpare not your malice, and powre out the liquor of your deadlieſt poiſon: if not ſo? yet what

" terror intrudeth with ſuſpition: But witleſſe & im-
" patient: whether am I carried with theſe outrages;
" either there is truth or falſhood: if the firſt, what
" preuention? if the latter, why was any iorney? yet
" ſhall I be ſo childiſh to ſhrinke vnder this feare; as
" though each paltry ceremony were the armes of
" Religion, or cooſening deuice of Prieſtes a coun-
" termaunding of the actions of Kings? tuſh; I will
" not ſubmit to ſuch mockery, nor ſuffer my ſelfe to
" be the ſtall of deriſion. No, no; before I conſent to
" be ſo ſottiſhly baffled: Murder, Fury, & Contempt
of all Women ſhall reuenge my diſtemprature.

In this mood he haſted toward the Pallace, but the inſtant violence of his Reſolution was thus ſtangely rebated: Eare the tract of the groue had fully conduced him to the end, a ſodden ſtorme intercepted further haſtineſſe, and compelled his retreat to a place of ſhellter: now; whether the nature of the tempeſt effectuated drowſineſſe; or his ſpirites weried with meditation deſired reſt: or the very braine dryed with ſorrow ſhruncke vp the ſtringes of his eyeliddes; or him ſelfe was willing to this courſe to ouerpaſſe his feare; he quiet-
" ly fell a ſleepe, had not his ſleepe the more diſqui-
" eted him, like a man reparinga ruinous houſe, and
" pulling downe aparte haleth alſo the whole to his
greater charge: For a formidable dreame thus ſurpriſed his repoſe. An Eagle mounting to her neſt had onely too young ones to feed, but whether ſhe conceiued vnkindneſſe againſt them or in

Mengrelius troubled with a Dreame.

the

the misfortune of her ruin brought not wherewithall to succour them; or displeased at some other accident, shee threwe them to the ground, leauing her selfe childlesse, and them liueleſſe: yet they recouered, and miraculously gathering new life, and extraordinary stature returned, ere their mother had made a second flight; seeming by their demeanour as though they come to comfort her: but shee stomacking the curtesie, conuerted her loue to rage, and began a manner of contention against them, they seeing the daunger desisted awhile, till very necessitie of life draue them to offence; and offence increasing with anger, anger forgat it selfe, and so betweene them the olde one was torne in pieces, which when a better consideration deliberated on, with a monstrous howling they departed: the noyse whereof awaked *Mengrelius*, so his Dreame ended, and the tempest ended, but a worse dismay began then before.

At last remembring himselfe, he hasted to a priuate Posterne of the palace, where finding the appointed Comptroller of his house, hee with him imparted such secrets, that as the charge was of importance, his dispatch was with speedinesse. For he presently returned with sadnesse from the *Empresse*, and trouble from the Court; shee submitting to his appointment, and they appointing that nights libertie, if it pleased him to visite her; whereupon he hasted vp, and dismissing all from his presence, conferred onely with his mother a-

bout strange things and tolde his sister *Pisana* his cruell resolution; wherein the suspition was so terrible, that forgetting the weakenesse of his *Empresse*, hee left them and thus astonished the helpwanting Princesse: with a soule-vexing preamble:

„ Vnfortunate *Arcabella*, not in that thou art the
„ daughter of *Samarchanus*, but wife of *Mengre-*
„ *lius*: vnderstand by me; that I am accursed for my
„ owne sake, and thou art cast with the same verdict
„ for my sake, as being the instrumentall cause of
„ vnhappinesse: the Oracle confirming thee a mo-
„ ther of strange Issue, pronouncing my dejection
„ by my sonne, death by my daughters husband,
„ and confusion, if I infringe the oth to *Kalucki*; not
imagine I am caried away with suppoſes: For what I haue rufully reported, thou mayest pitifully ouer-looke, with that he shewed them *Misocrapus* Tablet, and they read the Prophesie thus insculped.

Apollos doome will not the King delude,
Yet breatheth terrour, vengeance, and despight;
A male, and female shall one birth conclude
By Princely meanes obscured from thy sight.
The sonne shall liue, how euer rage conspire
To cut the threed our Destinies *haue spun,*
And in thy life against his owne desire
Possesse the Throne, which Samarchanus *wonne.*

The daughters Sonne a Shepheard shall obtaine
By strange aduenture vnaspar'aged,
And he must end thy peace, life, Kingdoms raigne,
When Trebizonda *shall be forraged.*

Beleeue, or not; all's one: I yet conclude,
Apolles *doom will not the King delude.*

This they read, and to this was some reply in readinesse, but *Mengrelius* interposed this breuitie; that my former Oath may therefore bee kept inuiolate, and my vexed spirits from forcer out-rage restained, I command (what euer vnreasonablenesse seeme in the command) that as soone as Nature hath brought thy children into the light, thy owne hands depriue them of the light; this see thou regard to performe, and performe as thou regardest thy life; but *Arcabella* permitted not the freedom of this bitternesse, for she thus aduentured to repell it.

What inhumane crueltie is heere threatned, " and vnmanly prosecutions deuised; nothing but " inordinate passions, distempered behauiour, bro- " ken sleeps, fearefull out-cries, inconsiderate vows, " and vnnaturall tyranies? Neere tell mee of vn- " princely protestations, better resolue to trans- " gresse enforced contracts, which satisfaction may " counteruaile; then continue in settled wickednesse " which repentance cannot mitigate? better submit " to inscrutable mercie, whose goodnesse euer ex- " ceedeth formidable appearance, then execute ma- "

" licious wilfulneſſe, whoſe out-rages are ſeldome
" preuented? What Law, Iudgement, or Reaſon
" wil allow, condemne, diſappoint? The maſſacre
" of innocent Babes; the Preuiledge of ſacred Prin-
" ces; the right of Legitimate Heires. But to the
" purpoſe; hath heauenly reuolution threatned an
" ouerthrow? What earthly meanes can prohibite
" the pleaſure of the Gods; hath our feare taken
" roote from the Oracle of *Apollo*? What humane
" cunning ſhall hinder the courſe of their ſpringing?
" Yet peraduenture you haue miſtaken: what was
" propheſied, or propheſied what your ſelfe haue
" miſtaken: beſides each fond Dreame muſt not be
" beleeued, or lying Prieſt allowed; as for deuine re-
" ſolutions, neither can the reaching wit of man im-
" peach the credite, nor Furie of deuils controule the
" enforcement. By the paines therefore of *Baltaſa* in
" our birth I deſire; by the teares & ſadnes of *Piſana*:
" by my owne chaſtitie; by thy aduancement to this
" Empire; by the ſecrets of our marriage I coniure;
" either your patience to tollerate the burden of
" heauenly Impoſition, or reſuſcitate your alacritie
" to recouer your renowne: by the one you ſhall be
" ſure to proceed in a good courſe; by the other
" confirme the faith of your ſubiects toward you;
" who ſetled ſo long in a happy peace, & confirmed
" in the Loue of a Royall Prince, wil neither hazerd
" the one, nor leaue the other, though *Kalucky*
" ſhould immagine there were cauſe of innouation.
" But what was this otherwiſe, then to ſpit againſt

the

the winde, whose violence returneth the filth into thy face, or to impart the sweetnesse of musick to a deafe auditorie. For hee either not hearing, because he minded it not; or not minding, because it liked not: or not liking, because it pleased not; or not pleasing, because it disagreed to his humorous suspition, answered; My will shall now stand for a Lawe, and pronounceth death to thy children; or losse of thy owne life; with which conclusion of death departing, as the beginning was death, the proceeding death, and the ende death, so no doubt had it finished with a double death, if prouident carefulnesse had not preuented desperate quickenesse. For the Empresse all inraged, put in practise diuers motions of a broken spirit; as rashing of her ornaments of Maiestie; scratching her louely face with a manifest rebellion against beautie, dissheuering her daintie plighted tresses in scorn of comelinesse, and bethumping her panting sides swelling with the life striuing within; so that the Ladyes had a taxe of difficultie imposed to withhold her from a desperate crueltie, til a new worke proposed it selfe: for her spirites weakened with the threanes of her pangs; and her pangs increasing with child-bearing trauell, subiected her to necessitie of life, and induced them to further her deliuerance, which was done in such reuerent manner, and womanly order, that the secret was secret to themselues, and the hurliburly consisted in the action, which busied, and not in the parly, which troubled them.

Thus

The Empresse is deliuered of two children, the one named Trezoboro, the woman Brizaca.

THus may the next Morning send fame abroad to declare the hazard of *Arcabella* her selfe, and the birth of two Princes; who though they seemed marked for the court of life, yet durst they not but appoint them to the house of death; allowing onely this fauour, to name them before they went that their entertainment might bee like *Empresse* children; so the man was called *Trezoboro*, and the woman *Brizaca*, and thus began their Tragedie.

No sooner had the carefull *Bullutasa* clogged the mothers armes with so precious a burden, but shee affoorded them ghastly lookes and sore outcries, the children smiling but newe borne, and laughing the faster for her threatning the greater; which had shee warily marked (though the dangerous choise caused the preferment of her owne life, whereby shee demaunded the instrument of of death) yet surely would the heart neuer haue consented to so pittiesse an action, nor the tongue so quickly expressed the consent of the heart. For in dimnesse of sight (teares still hindring the fulnes of seeing) beholding how pleasure and delight made reziance in their countenance, shee forgate either to doe or to speake; and proceeding further, burst foorth into abrupt speeches, threatning to kil her selfe with them. But the mother fore-seeing the inconueniences of a troubled spirit, by policie wrested the knife from her handes, and by force

tooke

tooke the children out of her armes, imploying another in that butcherly office, who had charge to haſt with diligence, and diſpatch with ſecrecie.

The Ladie daring not denie, nor yet ſhe durſt not compliſh, had libertie, teares and kneeling procuring this libertie, to depart out of ſight, and ſo cured her ſelfe into ſome obſcure corner; miſtruſting the light would haue made her aſhamed to murther infants, but here a conſcience not to doe amiſſe, ouer-wrought with a ſudden timerouſneſſe, that the heart repented, and the hands could not: Then ſhe tryed a place where ſhee might ſee what ſhe did, but now their ſmiles cauſed ſo many teares, that ſhee was neither able to abide their laughing, or her owne ſelfe trembling: Once againe ſhe poſted to the corner of a Groue, but here a ſudden quaking turned the ſharpned edge to her owne heart, as ſhee proffered her hand to their throat: At laſt remembring the penaltie, ſhee concluded her owne life dearer then all the Princes in the world; ſo that growing halfe angry, ſhe tooke againe the knife, and more ſtoutly went forward, yet proffering a ſtroake reared out right fainting for feare, and fearing euer after ſo to preſume; thus as ſhe went ſhee returned, proſtraying her ſelfe both before the mother and the mothers mother, deſiring to abide a thouſand torments, rather then imagine a thought amiſſe againſt them: ſo that a new courſe of immolation muſt be taken in hand, or ſome ſtrange deuiſe of concealement put in pra-

else; whereupon they reasoned among themselues on the fame of the action, the charitie of the deed, and the honour of the attempt: nor left they out the difficultie of the enterprise, the penaltie of infringing the Emperors pleasure, the way to preuent the greatest mischiefe, which was the accesse to see them murdered, nor the recompence, which time might recouer, if the Princes should be preserued? so that *Pallantza* made *Arcabella* strengthen her selfe with the returned spectacle, taught *Arcabella* meanes to bee patient, and patience in her anguish, told *Arcabella*, *Trezebors* and *Brizeis* should liue, and reioyced with *Arcabella*, for that *Gellida* and *Perinthum* vndertooke the matter.

How Gellida and Perinthum saued the Princes.

THese were two daughters of the King of *Capadocia Opulus*, who kept his abode at the Citie of *Archelaris*, so famous for the circomference of Channell, which the Riuer *Halys* by winding it selfe about it doth make, and in a iollitie prouide of the action, hasteth to the great *Euxinum* to boast of his passage. Now by reason hee was contributorie to the *Empire*, and had setled his brother *Cibtroxus* in the great Office of *Dianas* Priest-hood in *Taurica*, these Ladies from their Vncles priuiledge wrought the ruin of the childrens securitie, and presently posted to *Chrysoxene*, to whom they discouered the whole processe, the penaltie of the Law, the cruell determination of the Emperour,

and the shortnesse of time, as being limited but fourteene dayes of returne: When the reuerent *Arch-Priest*, heard the discourse, rather conceiuing well on the piety of his Neeces with their *Honorable* pollycie, then disputing on feares or troubles depending, like a man prising integritie before worldly respect, He confirmed the action, and thus briefly warranted likely hood of successe: Although (*Royall Ladies*) as a main subiect to the weaknesse of our first frailty, I might seeme amased with your strange story and paines taking: yet sometime made acquainted with the like occurrents, and peraduenture matters of greater secret, though not of such consequence, I desist from vnnecessary questions, and thus giue light to your furtherance. *Dianas* sacrifices are euery Moone celebrated the first day, and consist of humane bloud from the Veines of young Infants, wherewith we besprincke the altares and then consume the bodies with fier, other ceremonies are infinite, and easier to be knowne by eye witnesse then report, now by vertue of my authority will I proclaime the necessitie of a new supply, out of which you shall choose a cupple a Male and Female, and with them depart to *Trebizond*, presenting the *Emperor* this signe of my affection, and duty. For if *Mezentius* importune the murder, which he will quickly doe, then may these tollerate the cruelty, and you with the true *Princes* escape to *Cappadocia*, if this please; detract not time

" but returne in peace: if not; to morrow is the day
" of pacification, and you shall vnderstand the plea-
" sure of the Goddesse:
" But the *Ladies* quickly apprehended *Cicerons*
" deuice and thought it bootelesse to make further
" tryall, therefore gratifying their Vncle they retur-
" ned to the *Empresse*, as you see the friend of a faul-
" tie subiect to some great *Prince*; who either con-
" demneth to death or banishment: for shee remai-
" ned all this while in discomforts and doubtes, be-
" cause whatsoeuer chanced, she must be deprined
" of her Children; but by that time *Gellida* and *Be-*
" *rinthym* had pacified with reason, and enforced
" argument of two inconueniences, to beare the les-
" ser burden, she cheared her selfe, and somewhat
" raysing her body with a heart enforcing fearefull-
" nesse, and teares compounded of sorrow and glad-
" nesse deliuered her Twinnes to the *Ladyes*; who re-
" ceiued them with a modest stilnesse and departed
" accordingly, leauing the strangers like silly lambes
" in a Butchery:
" No sooner were they thus dismissed, but the
" *Emperor* (infringing the particulars of his owne
" state) would needs visit *Arcabella*, and in person
" behold the execution: For thus it chanced, since
" the time of his suspition and fearefull Dreame, he
" was much conuersant with *Belgernndo* a magitian
" now counted in Court, but till this necessity neuer
" esteemed, nor reputed worthy such a title,
" had not fortune beene the Maister, and meere

happ the Minister of his renowne, because *Mengrelius* first acquainted him with the couenantes betweene *Kalucki* & himselfe, & after with the vision of the *Eagles*, which he enterpreted by himselfe and his Children, wherin he so iumped with the *Emperors* ielosie, and indeed seconded the Propheſie of the Oracle, (which was not as yet discouered to any body,) that he seemed to dote on his skill, and graced him with a Roabe of Purple, a Cape of Maintenance, and winged rod like *Mercuries Caduceus*: withall he commaunded the Court to honour him for his respect, so that his reputtation accrewed from *Mengrelius*, will and he made his owne power the meanes to continue it; which he might the better do, because the birth of the *Princes* chanced as was before intimated; besides *Belgerunde* (vnderhand acquainted with the *Empres* vnwillingnesse to the murder, and flat denial to be the executioner) he reuealed it to the *Emperor*, and wrought a further ampliation of his credite, by inferring the new discoueries, concerning his brother, and the warres likly to ensue, if the couenants betweene them weare infringed: Whereupon the *Emperor* seemed in a manner distracted conceiuing it would be so, and fearing it should be so, as if indeed it weare so, and with the misdoubt of he knew not what, rather raging then distempred hasted to *Arcabella*, threatning nothing but fier and sword, if they once imaginged to deceiue him: they againe exclaimed, as farre as they

durſt, & dared to execrate all incantations and deluding ſorceries: but neither exclamations nor execrations, nor the ſweete infants themſelues mollefied the hard hated *Emperor*. For he beheld the Maſſacre in perſon, leauing them to what pacification, they could procure; and returned himſelfe to ſee, who durſt find faulte.

By this time are *Gellida* and *Perinthum* welcomed into *Cappadocia*, as gratious to *Opatus* their father, and gratified by the ſubiects of the kingdome: yet concealing the ſecrets of their iorney they watched an opportunitie thus to diſpoſe of the *Princes*. *Coranus* & *Bertoſus* too brothers dwelling togeather in one houſe, and hauing maried *Dalie* and *Phemon*, too ſiſters not altogeather of Ignoble parents aſſured the world, that loue and good order can affright *Enuy* and *Contention*: For whether their delight one in another conuicted thoſe diſpleaſures, which paſſe betweene man and man, nothing was offenſiue, or if it were the offence neuer appeared, or whether the time affoorded no ſcope to the ambition of men, or peruiſhneſſe amongſt women, the huſbandes carefully endeuored to looke to their buſineſſe, the wiues modeſtly agreed to content their huſbandes, and both like a well made bundell of ſweete ſmelling flowers, yeelded comfort to the ſence and life: To theſe (*moſt mighty King and Duke*) weare theſe *Princes* deliuered, and theſe (pointing to *Coranus* and *Bertoſus* indeed) be the men accountable for this reck-

The Empres Children deliuered to Coranus and Bertoſus, too Brothers in Capadocia:

ning

ning; so that if their Fortune be worth the discouering from their Infancie forward, no doubt by their discourses the trueth will in more liuely colours appeare.

NOw by the plentious times of *Katabasie*; victories (quoth King *Zalby*) I am much satisfied in the redaction of this *Chaos*, because till now Fame hath beene too sparing of her secrets, and the report of the *Trebizondian* turmoiles was either deuised the trueth, or augmented according to the disposition of the author. For we knew that *Mengrelius* possessed the Diadem, and *Kalucki* meant to be beholding to his owne valour for another kingdome: whereunto (as if an heroicall presumption had been the breath of some heauenly voyce) Fortune quickly lifted him vp, and gaue him the further *Tartarie* in reward of his paines, which first made him passage through my vpper *Contagena*, and after wrought his acceptation with the magnanimous *Mahumalla* the widow, Empresse of the late deceased *Burka*: so that by your fauour (Nephew *Rugio*) I wil gratulate *Egerius* for the participating this Noueltie; and entreat *Corinus* and *Bertoius* (seeing we are so forward on our iourney) not to leaue vs, till we come to safe harbout. All this and more (answered the Duke) shal be but part of my dutie, yet doth the eyes of feare fore-see, that the end will be worse, then the begin-

Montanus hearing the Historie of Mengrelius is much troubled when the Duke confesseth that he loueth Delte na

ning;

ning; and both beginning and ending a croſs neſſe against me. For *Egenius* himſelfe is diſpleaſed, *Berrusus* dreadfull, and *Corannus* miſtrusteth my loue to *Deltona*.

„ But when *Montanus* heard the name of loue, „ ſo ſadly pronounced, and the name of *Deltona*, „ and the name of another's loue to *Deltona* (like the „ *Indian Odonta*, who by the hunters noyſe is alar„ red of trouble and diſquiet, and yet to ſaue himſelfe rather to prepare his courage to reſiſt, then by policie to eſcape) he ſtarted vp, and ſomewhat angerly (for his aſſociate furie was moderated) „ ſpake to this purpoſe. Great Princes as you ex„ pect dutie and allegiance from your ſubiects, ſo „ muſt you be the authors of iuſtice and vertue in „ your ſelues; els may you be feared for tyrants, and „ hated for beeing feared; els may you incurre the „ danger of repining, which at aduantage is ſubiect „ to inuasion, & will queſtionleſſe ſubborne euery traiterous reuolt; els may you awake a ſleeping „ enemie, as ſometimes the priuate occaſions of one „ Kingdome maketh parties taking from another. „ Let Honour then ouer-looke his *Index* for particular directions, and you maintaine goodneſſe for „ the enlargement of renowne: as for the matter in „ hand, a compulſiue loue is abſolute incontinencie, „ and the diſſeiſing of another's right, is worſe then „ tyrannie, eſpecially in a matter of ſuch conſequence „ as the diſturbing the beautious *Deltona*, whom „ ſome heauenly influence hath warranted that I

doe

and must enioy: assure you then no deuice, or force of man shall bereaue me of my claime, consi-
dering my interrest.

Looke how some strange apparition doeth set on worke the eyes of such as are mooued with nouelties; so did the suddennesse of *Montanus* speech amaze the hearers: for the King maruailed, *Rugio* stomached, *Egerius* gazed, *Coranus* with *Bertosus* trembled, & all were silent; vntill the Duke grudging at the reprehension, durst not giue way (as he supposed) to such audaciousnesse, but thought to shake the violence in this manner. Boldly spoken what ere thou art, yet ouer-caryed With presump-
tion (which many times ouer-throweth a good purpose, by taking a wrong course to suppresse a badde) thou abusest a Prince, and hast waded fur-
ther then strength is able to deliuer, or policie to refraine: besides it is not for Shepheards and men of base estates, to entermeddle with the actions of persons priuiledged, and sacred: But to permit a straggling vp-start thus afore my owne subiects, the King in presence, in my Court, and to my face, to distaine my honour, which neuer was impea-
ched? I may not, I will not, I cannot abide it, though my pleasure maintained a fault indeed.

A fault (replyed *Montanus*) by *Marpesius* Al-
tar such a fault, that vnlesse you determine other-
wise, then to affright the peereslesse *Deltona*; it is not menaces, or titular dignities, shall keepe re-
uenge from sending her ministers amongst you;

or make me ſubiect (againſt vertue) to imperious will.

The King *Zalby* was much mooued at this, but *Rugio* more; as ſuſpecting a purpoſed neglect of dutie: yet perceiuing a ſetled countenance, and vndeuided ſpeeches to conclude the rebuke, they knew not how to enterpret it; conſidering the partie reputed an inferiour amongſt them: at laſt they called *Coranus*, who more fearefull to oppoſe againſt the Duke, then firme in expectation of *Montanus*, told them of his ſhipwracke at Seas *Placandus* entertainement; his loue to *Deltona*, the Contract at the Caue, and in a ſparing manner, how he promiſed her to diſcouer a further ſecret: which wrought thus much, that the King fore-ſaw there might be cauſe of affliction; and he ſeemed likely to be of better account, by which reaſon the Duke was pacified, and *Montanus* moderated his forwardneſſe: but who had ſeene *Egerius* behold him in this extaſie pleading for *Deltona*, would haue ſworne he had beene contemplating ſome Prodegie: preſently *Philano* aduaunced himſelfe, and aſking *Egerius* what troubled him, bade him withall tell his opinion of *Montanus*. Truely (ſayd *Egerius*) accidents of admiration chance in the world, and men are ſubiect to high direction, ſo that it muſt needs fall out, that hee hath beene ouer-burdened with extremitie, and is ſure of better deſert then the outward habite or appearance, which hee the rather allowed, becauſe by his owne example

he

hee might immagine as vnlikely posibilities to come to passe. Vvell sayd *Philano*, ere wee haue done, I beleeue, wee shall haue much to doe; for as yet we are in the midst of a confusion, and ignorance tryumphes she hath, and must make vs astonished. But the Duke (loth that a time of mirth and entertainment should bee out-faced with trouble and dismay) dismissed them awhile, euery man to his owne course, and imployed himselfe to honor the King with entertainment befitting; whereuppon a solemne hunting inuited him to varietie of pastime, and no man was wanting, whom place or pleasure induced to attend: and as you see a cunning enemie obscure himselfe in some remote place of aduauntage, when hee apprehendeth a stronger force is comming against him: So played the Inhabitants of these woods, after they vnderstood how they were besieged; till suspecting the ill succesſe of a tryall, they tooke aduantage to escape, little thinking that their steppes betrayed them, and gaue notice to the aduersarie of their beeing; who by this time discrying their flight, shooted for ioy, as if already victory had administred both renowne and reward: in the end, least delay might breed disaduantage, the Houndes (with the addition of their Masters policie in laying of Toiles, and orderly following the execution) quickly ouer-tooke them in the Retreat, and them subiected to a furious slaughter. But the Officers loth to make too tyrannous a spoyle,

ſounded the rechaite, ſo the reſt at randome were aſſured of more reſt; yet reſted not the Duke, till he conducted the King in to a gallant Arbour, ſo cunningly handled, that a man might haue ſaid the deuiſer determined to grace the walkes of the Pallace with a worke of ſpecialtie, and ſet foorth his owne praiſes, as if he were by it to commend himſelfe; for who could, but aske his name to know him, and extoll him once knowne.

Heere was a roiall Banquet prepared, and an after time of Counſell (ſorting with the conuenience of the place) concluded, that *Bertofus* ſhould end the Storie of *Mengrelius*; who as willing to be diſburdened of hir owne feares, as they ſeemed to be acquainted with others fortune, ſent for *Montanus* to come within hearing, and thus began.

Bertofus proceedeth in the ſtory of Mengrelius.

AFter *Gellida* and *Perinthum* had taken notice of our ſolitary life, knowing we retyred our ſelues in the fulneſſe of a good opinion, leaſt the deceiuing vanities of the world might endanger or entrappe vs, they committed the Infants vnto our charge; not without ſome circumſtances of the perill in the diſcouerie, the feare of both the *Empreſſes*, the troubles depending, and their owne reuerent care toward them, as if the hope of many Kingdomes lay heauy either vppon our diligence or negligence. Thus were wee much eſteemed for the reſort of the Kings daugh-

ters vnto vs, who indeede often visited, and as often rewarded vs; so that wee had cause to bee carefull, as well for their sakes that commanded, as theirs wee had in custodie: this wee performed with reasonable successe. For the time of Nursing ouer-passed, the Princes seemed to scorne their Infancie by entertaining a third year, to which they posted with such a gallantnesse, as if indeede they had knowne with iudgement to haue welcommed all gallantnesse. But (most Noble *King* and *Duke*) looke how a suddaine " storme is so much the more terrible to a well bur- " dened Barke, by how much it is in iollitie of a " good beginning, and almost in sight of safe har- " bour; so was the pride of our hopes rebuked; " and when wee least suspected alteration in such " a kinde, there happened a most vnkinde alte- " ration. For as my brother and I solaced the " Princes in the walkes of a pretty Groue, where- " on the Handy-worke of man had bestowed ad- " dition, and stood playing the wantons with con- ceit of their towardlinesse, who by this time seemed the Heauens charge, as well as our charge; comes the Arch-pirate *Cleonidas*, and altering the manner (though not the profession) hurried vs together toward the Hauen, where his ships lay at Anchor.

With that *Montanus* in suddaine motion interrupted his speech, & hearing the name of *Cleonidas* pronounced, cried out: O Eternall Powers!

„ hath *Cleonidas* been an Actor in this Tragedie, and
„ do I liue to heare ſo odious a ſound to my ſences?
„ Or ſhall I liue to thanke the gracious *Nemeſis* for
„ his deſtruction? Or may I liue to reuenge my diſ-
„ graces: if the *Ocean* haue ſcorned to bee poiſoned
„ with his carkas? O *Princes!* pardon my impati-
„ ence: this is the head from whence my affliction
„ ſprings, and runneth into a ſtrong channell of diſ-
„ quiet, this is the roote ſupporting a ſtocke of miſe-
„ rie, and ſpreadeth into branches of all vnhappi-
„ neſſe to ſhade my happineſſe: this is the author of
„ ſuch immanitie, as my tongue trembleth to report
„ it; though he ſeemed raiſed from the deepeſt hell
„ to put it in practiſe. As he was ſetting forward this
„ inuection, King *Zalby* perceiuing hee had awaked
ſome conceit of importance, roſe vp with a milde
intent of pacification (leaſt in counterchecking the
humour, it might either grow to violence, or ex-
aſperate his diſcontent) and thus perſwaded him:
„ Princely *Montanus*, We are not ſo incredulous of
„ thoſe infinite accidentes, which are directed by
„ higheſt influence, as to oppoſe againſt your deſert;
„ but lay the fault of our ſlight reſpect vpon igno-
„ rance, and permit *Bertoſus* to goe forward: then
„ by a Kings proteſtations, I ſweare, your deſires
„ ſhall not range to ſuch a ſcope, but wee will bring
„ them within limitation; and if neede requireth,
„ with a royall conſent aſsiſt your deſires. By this
time had diſcretion wonne the field, and *Mon-
tanus* ſeemed halfe aſhamed, yet loth to make any

demiſſe

demisse appearance, hee thus replyed: Vertue (great King) I see will be like a square Die, euery way cast standing vpright: your wisedome hath ouer-ballanced my distemperature, and in a manner recouered my despaire, I will therefore fasten my anchor on the holde of your honourable promises, and attend more chearefully the discourse: with that he sate downe, and *Bertosus* proceeded.

Cleonidas hauing ranged farre from his shippes, ouer-tooke vs thus accompanied, and as wee thought to rudely, questioned our names, estates, and dwelling; wee supposing the reuerence of our King would haue made our peace, and the respect to the Princely Infants assured our libertie, boldly made answer, whatsoeuer you be, or intend; We are the Kings seruants, and these be the Kings children, and you and these (quoth one amongst the rest) be now prisoners to *Cleonidas*, and so shall remaine, til the tyrannous *Perinthum* redeeme them with the price of her honour; by this time wee vnderstood enough, and more then was pleasing (vnlesse you may immagine an offender standing before a seuere Judge, vrging his fault to as cruell a Iurie, and after their verdict giuing sentence of death, pleased with the same) For *Cleonidas* we knew, and his despight wee knew, and the cause of *Cleonidas* despight we knew flowed from the current of this venemous streame.

The Empres children with Coranus and Bertosus taken prisoners by Cleonidas.

The story of Parxus and Monedemus.

Artabazes was no sooner inuested with the roialties of *Armenia*, but *Cleonidas* taking his banishment in disgrace exprobrated his simplicitie, that had not more iudicially proceeded wherupon (as hee supposed, to recouer his credit, rather then for any mallice to the King) he attempted a second innouation; but herein his will exceeded his fortune: for the valliant *Peleus Artabazes* Admirall, ere he once set foot on land discomfited him at sea; and enforced his reculing to the dry *Iland*: where *Cleonidas* tooke a newe course of life both by Piracie, whereby hee gathered infinite wealth, and mercenary assisting other *Princes*, which obtained him many friends. In the time of this wantonnesse, on the borders of *Capadocia* was resident as Prouincial Gouernor *Prazus*, a *Gent*, of an ancient house and great estate, had not the crueltie of the warres wasted the same; but now somewhat resetled by his owne endeauours and policie, and in reasonable good grace with the king *Opacus* for his seruice; hee thought vpon nothing so much as the addition of Honour to his house: but apprehending a kinde of error in the kings wants, who was counted to exchang fauour for money, and vnwilling to giue him cause of distasting, considering that aduancements depend on the pleasure of the Prince; hee conferred with his friends about the king, and such whom seruice at Court had especially graced: so that perceiuing the

the vſe of their fauour; he compared himſelfe to a man ready for entrance in to ſome pleaſant Gallery, wherof he had the right, but another keepeth the Key: at laſt reaſon, reward, or his owne worth preuailed with them, & they inferred to the King the neceſſitie of the gouernment, the deſcart of the Gent. not without addition, how hee had loſt his Goodes, ſpent his Reuenewes, and haſſarded his Life: thus was the King prepared. Then proceeded they further by putting him in memorie, how the Vertuous expect a Recompence, as well as the Wicked deſerue Puniſhment: And laſtly, as the ſtring, which yeelded the ſweete ſound of the Muſicke, they touched this, that a preſent ſumme of Mony and yearely Reuenewes, would come into the Treaſurie. I will not ſay it preuayled; but the King moſt graciouſly ennobled him with the title of *Exarchate*, and conſtituted him Gouernour during life, according to the Lawes of the Land; whereuppon now the Lord *Praxus* was enforced to try *Mendemus* for a competent portion of money to defray his charges, that the entrance into his new Honour in good faſhion might eſtabliſh the opinion of the people by applauding his worth. This was a wretch liuing in the ſtrength and delicateſt place of all the Kingdomes; and had culled out the ſweeteſt dwellings, and peeces of Land to make his Inheritance ſufficient, like a skilfull Marchant who determining to iourney into a ſtrange Country, and contriuing

triuing to returne with credite and gaine, search-
eth euery Shoppe of a Citie, and selected the best
Peeces, the curiosest Stuffe, the choysest Dellicats,
and what els he needeth to serue his turne: Yet
for all this was the threed of his life drawne from
such a minde as seemed made of filth and durt,
and the very dregges of Miserie: For abroad his
complaints were of the ill thriuing of his Cattle,
the vntoward groth of his Corne, the ill payment
of the Tenants, the want of Money; when yet it
was well knowne, hee had alwayes great summes
lying by him; so that the bad vse of Natures bles-
sings, made him want indeed; and that vilde dispo-
sition, wrought him odious to Man, hatefull to
God, and irkesome to himselfe: Within dores
the Seruants were negligent, the Wife too lauish,
the Children too importunate, the Strangers too
cumbersome, the Kindred and Friendes bent to
vndoe him: Besides, hee was accompanied with
these ill Conditions, ridiculous Pride to make
men imagine, this baseneese the meanes to haue
himselfe glorified; heart-vexing Enuie to see any
thriue by him, or possesse their estats in good or-
der: Impudent delight to heare of an others Ouer-
throw, or Decay; and inhumane cruelty, if the er-
rour or inconueniences of life drawe men into his
danger: But to see him about his owne house ac-
companied with Pesants all ill apparelled, as him-
selfe sweaty, greasy, dusty nasty, and what-els ma-
keth a man odious, would shew a very comicall

Tragedy.

Tragedy: And if neceſsitie wreſted the disburſing of ſome ſmall ſummes, hee would excruciate him ſelfe; but when the State compelled his acceſſe, what curſings, what execrations, what torments? yet goe he muſt, and in ſuch a manner, as I cannot with patience deſcribe it; him-ſelfe like a Pedler with foule Linnen, beaſtly Garments, parcht, ſeamerent, and greaſie, and worſe then a Slaue: His men brought to his owne bent, Carters, Ploughmen, Shepheards, and ſuch as were imployed in the greateſt drudgerie: His Horſe and Furniture part old, broken, and foule; part ſuch as hee vſed in his buſineſſe, and part pawned, forfayted, or bought at ſecond hand: Onely this I muſt needes ſay, ſome things of his Auncestors he vſed in ſparing manner, which were good, and made the reſt more ridiculous.

With ſuch a fellow was *Praxus* to deale withall, and had ſo many delayes, ſuch excuſes, ſuch foreſwearings, yea teares from his eyes flowing from an hipocriticall heart, that he knew not whether to laugh, or to be angry: at laſt vpon ſufficient ſecuritie of a Morgage; a Lordſhip, on which hee had long ſince caſt his eyes for his younger Sonne, like him that ouerlooketh a flocke of Sheepe to ſee which be ready for the Butcher, or to inrich his Purſe; the Money was ſent, and *Menedemus* tormented him ſelfe, not ſo much for feare of the ſecuritie, as to depart from the company of his Treaſure. Now betweene the time of repaiment,

Menedemus had brought to his house the beautious *Lausana*, a Ladyes daughter left in ward to the King, and by this Monster of Nature bought out, more to make benefite of, then for loue to his sonne, or any other, whom her owne worth without addition, might well satisfie. With her did L. *Praxus* fall in loue; and seeing the forwardnes of so many Graces in so gracious a person, assured him selfe, they could not chose but grow vp to the becomming of the place wherein they were sette, and bring all wealth, happinesse, and contentment to him whose fortune had alotted the Harueſt; but perceiuing the difficulty of obtaining her, by reason of *Menedemus* bad disposition & ielosie, and that he was aleady engaged, and within his danger, (as you haue heard) he knew not well how to proceed; at last he contriued not to pay his Mony, and by a little stretching his Authoritie, sent a band of Souldiers to keepe possession of the Place; all which, be said, was for the wretches good, because if he would consent to the Contract of *Lausana*, he might at one payment receiue the Mony borrowed, and what he had disbursed for her Wardship; otherwise he would inferre to the King and Counsell, the complaints against him, the mischiefes he had procured, and some other enforcements, which would ouerthrow him for euer. Heere was *Menedemus* in an extasie, hauing so many Crosses, (as hee tearmed them) to be cleared of, as to be vtterly vndone for want of his Money,

to be vexed in ſoule with the feare of this accuſation, and to be put to greater charge in conteſting with the gouerner: but the ſecret of this terror depended on a priuate commaund from the king not to cellebrate *Lauſan as* mariage without his conſent; nor to yeeld to any contract to another vnlicenſed from the ſtate: This he tould *Praxus* with a ſtrange kinde of trembling, that he hoped he would not ſeeke his ouer-throw, nor put him to trouble in recouering his owne: but *Praxus* by faire intreatie not to ſuſpect diſpleaſure, conſidering ſhe ſhould rather be aduanced then diſparaged, wonne him to thinke well of the Maryage, and by engaging his Honour to ſee him ſecured or otherwiſe not damnefied, made ſome return of comfort, but indeed the abſolute deniall of his Money, vnleſſe he conſented to this courſe, enforced him at laſt to forget dutie and honeſtie; and ſo with a chearfulneſſe in the receipt thereof, hee deliuered *Lauſana* to *Praxus*: for which, hee gratified the wretch beyonde expectation. Thus either returned; *Menedemus* to his miſerable life, and *Praxus* to ſolemniſe the Triumph of his delight: wherein without doubt (if hee had proceeded with the Kings fauour) a happie contentment had been the reward of counterchangeable worth, and liking.

By this time is *Opacus* acquainted with each circumſtance, wherupon he ſommoned both *Praxus* and *Menedemus* to appeare at *Archelais*, which

Praxus would haue done, had not the other for feare of expences absolutely denied it, and putting him in minde of his promises, and how for his sake these dangers were threatned, detracted the time so long, that *Opacus* stomaching the contempt proclaimed them both Traitors, their goods and Landes to be confiscate, & their persons infamous and subiect to the Law: this newes had almost made cowardise the seruant of Valure, For *Menedemus* would haue kild himselfe, or rather hanged himselfe, least he should haue seene his one blood, had not *Praxus* awaked his drowsinesse with warrantice and comforte, that rather then for so slight offence extremity should open the gates of cruelty; *Curatsax* king of *Iberia* (to whom *Praxus* was of alliance, would not suffer him without cause to perish: this made them stand on their guard, and exasperated the kinges displeasure, who came forward in persone to represse the insolency, wherby *Praxus* was enforced indeed to expostulate the matter and after true intimation of the cause, and the kings extremitie, drue *Curatsax* with a sufficient Armie as auxiliary: so a ciuell warre (which more and more like a new kindled fier suffered to wast the woode by degrees) burst foorth at last with flames of dispight and desolation, especially to *Capodocia*, wherin it continued and began, and *Opacus* was constrained to higher *Cleonidas*, who at this time kept about the Riuer *Cirus*, and when he list to come vp into the Country carried

his

his Boates on Camelles backes ouer the Mountaines, leauing his shippes sufficiently conducted and secured, with his ayde and the death of *Menedemus*, (who in a time of Truce would needes goe see his Land, and in what estate his inheritance stood, but was intercepted by certaine of *Cleonidas* new Soldiers, to whom his owne Tenants had betrayed him, and so submitted to their fury, was the Warres ended, *Praxus* restored to the kings fauour, and the King of *Iberia* dismissed.

THis businesse thus ouerpassed *Opacus* inuited *Cleonidas* to the Pallace, as well to gratefie his vertue, as to pay his Soldiers: heere had he light and conference with *Perinthum* the Kinges second daughter, and whether the opinion of his owne worth, or the vnfained affection vnto her, induced; in very good manner he demaunded her loue, had not loue commaunded the contrary, which at the first was taken as a coultome amongst womē, till a continuall repugnancy both in speech & action shewed rather a scorne, then neglect of his suite: this agrauated his greife, but not extenuated his passiō, because quelhomelle subiected to her perfection, and now debarred from the thinge he desired, he resembled a man in a continuall feuer, still longing for what he is forbidden, and loathing what is prescribed: At last rather enflamed, then enamored, he vrged *Opacus* consent, who to be plaine neither

The story of Cleonidas and Perinthum.

"ther durſt deny, nor would accord: reſembling a
"man holding the Woolfe by the eare, which if he
"hold faſt he is ſure to be bitten, if he let looſe, he
"is in danger of life: So he feared on the one ſide
"*Cleonidas* reuenge in the deniall, and his daughters
"defamation in the accord: yet ſeing the neceſsitie
of the buſineſſe, and the others importunitie for
an anſwer: kindneſſe had reciprocall paſſage be-
tweene them, and the king tooke time to conferre
with his daughter.

But *Perinthum* aſſuered her father, that her faul-
con pitched a higher flight, which he not much
"miſliked, and therefore to auoyd all inconue-
"niences ſent her with *Gellida*, her other ſiſter
to attend the *Empres* of *Trebizond*, and enfor-
med *Cleonidas*, as though their owne wilfulneſſe,
or deſier to be acquainted with a place of ſuch re-
nowne had vndertaken the progreſſe: To this
excuſe he knew not how to oppoſe. For finding
Opacus rather wiſhing a pacification of the diſplea-
ſure, then countenancing the Vnkindneſſe, he
moderated his Indignation; and ſo departed, nei-
ther warranting his loue, nor expreſsing his hate
to the Country: Till vnderſtanding of the Ladies
returne, hee practiſed many meanes to circumuent
her; and ſayling in them, as many forages to diſ-
quiet the Land, which ſome times with ſucceſſe
had outragious effectes; ſome times with ſtronge
hand, as forcible repulſes; till at laſt, Fortune wil-
ling to doe him a pleaſure, as the Champion of

her

her quarrels, brought this prey to his choyse, and him to this place at such time, as wee were playing with the Princely Infants: so that the action related his pride in vnmannerly hastinesse hurrying vs away, and thanked Opportunitie, as it should seeme, without further questions in vnproper cruelty tying vs in bands: For all wee intreated with teares, threatned with anger; lamented with sighes, anon rayled on their presumption, after offred sufficient ransome, and last of all, pleaded conscience, manhood, and the Law of all Nations. The Infants in the meane while, smiling at the vproare, neither dismayed with the company as Strangers, nor actions as troublesome. But neither intreaties, promises, prayers, offers, threatnings, nor exclamations, could preuaile: Forwith tedrous Iornies they brought vs to the Sea side, where their Shippes lay at anchor, and were ready to attend the cauling of the Winde, who by this time, began to chide our negligence, that was not thankfull to so kind putting vs in minde of our businesse: onely wee expected the comming backe of the Captaine; whom *Clonidas* had sent to certifie *Opacus* of the accident.

But when his returne assured an illusion, and that the king disclaimed any right to the infants, warranting withall the fiction, but a deuice to set our selues at libertie? neuer was so fit a time to pattern out wrath and fury, as in *Clonidas* whose eies glistered like Fier, and impatience scarce for-

bore with his owne hands to teare vs a peeces, commaunding vs to be tortured for deluding him; which as a villaine was forward to execute foure great *Quinquiremes* scowred first by vs, and after winded about, as if they meant with aduantage to set vpon vs: Which when *Clemides* had beheld with the eyes of aduice, and perceiuing they were but Messengers of some mischiefe following, (for by this time hee had descried the whole Fleete,) we were a while forgotten, and hee (to our amaze) proceeded with such courage and iudgement, that in applying the like to generous performaunces, hee might haue prooued a sufficient member of a politicall body: for the Souldiers were placed each one in a congruent diſtance, least shuffled togeather, might haue bred a confusion: The Fireworkes were prepared, the Fights were ouerseene, enclosed, and well flancked; the Weapons were considered on either to skirmish a farre off, or to grapple, if need required; and the vnable and insufficient, were separated into some remote corner from troubling the rest: Amongst whom, was our account cast; yet some honorable conceite vnwilling to be tyranous against Infants, and men valikly to be preiudiciall, remitted vs from bands, and imbarked vs into a very good brigandine to be transported to the *Dry Iland*: where the strength and conueniencie of the place both seeured, and contented him, when he list to make his retreat.

Thus

THus were we parted from the company of death and danger; for *Cleonides* presently made toward the Gallies, but (Most mighty Princes) how the wrathfull *Nemesis*, or his fortunate *Genius* determined of him I know not, because, vntill this occasion, his name was neuer once a subiect to talke of, though his wretchednesse yeelded many times sufficient matter to thinke on. But wee kept a steady passage to our Harbour, and had cause of comfort, when the trauell of foure dayes brought vs within the sight of the Iland: Yet looke how a sparke of Fire euen at the very present of his taking leaue of the heate giueth the greater light; so wee gaue a sodaine shoot of ioy, with a Swanlike ditie, at the instant of our destruction: For on a sodaine, a North-west winde whirled the Barke about, and though the Mariners endeuored the contrary, wee as quickly lost, as enioyed the former delight: Then followed a Storme, which with commmance waited to the Winde, raised a dangerous Tempest: last of all, approched a second Darkenesse, wherein the night drew her Curtaines to hide vs from the face of Heauen, had not the contention in those vpper Regions giuen vs more light, then wee wished, because bringing terrour with the Thunder, wee neither durst behold either Earth, or Heauen. On the other side, the Sea hearing the bigg voyce of the Windes, awaked her sluggishnesse, and

The Shipwracke of Coranus and Bertosus with the Emperors children, who are here discouered to be Egerius & Deltona: But by their proper names Trezobore & Brizaca.

perceiuing such variance betwixt the Fire & Aire for superioritie, would not imbace her selfe, but thought to make her greatnesse appeare, as well as they; and so swelled beyond measure, growing to that rage, that wee thought it better to be subiect to Men, then implacable Waues.

This continued a whole day and night, and the continuance wrought effect to put vs in minde of our frailtie, and to make preperation for another dwelling, because the Barcke vnable to house vs, was willing to dislodge vs; and we likewise grew weary of being such Tenants, especially my poore Brother and I, who seemed dying, before death; and ten times dying, to behold the sweete Infants cling to vs for succour, who were not able to helpe our selues: Yet at last Nature preuayling against Wilfulnesse, wee determined to tarry for, rather then to runne to so bad a friend as Death, and therefore agreed to striue with Redresse, if wee could, and to tie the Children to our backes, concluding vto change their Names what euer chaunced; and withall, changed our Places, seeling our selues neere to some strong Planckes, and Chestes: So, by that time our *Genius* assured the splitting of the Shippe, I was safe in this vnsafetie on a seasoned Truncke of Firre, and my Brother on a spare Mast; both which, floted for a while neere the dismembred Barke, like silly Birdes houering about their Mother entrapped in a Nette, and leaue her not, till the Fawkner assure, hee is the

messenger of death. What should I say (most mightie King) the feare was more then the danger; and yet may the greatest scorner of Perils, confesse the danger exceeded any meanes, which humaine pollecie had to auoyde it, considering our burdens, and combersome company, which did rather augment, then diminish our griefe. For alas, to be in hassard of drowning amidst the cruell Billowes, desperat of succour, on vnfirme seates, and with infant Princes tyed to our backes, who can but thinke wee had sorrow sufficient, and suppose our heauinesse a wonderfull temptation: At length we seemed cheared with a life cast in a new mold by perceiuing faire weather approching, resembling a condemned person meditating with repen-
tance, and sadly casting his lookes on the ground,
as not daring to lift them vp to heauen, till the
found of a Pardon infuseth strength and courage
into his decayed soule: whereupon wee setled vp our selues, and began to appease the Children, who as if they meant to finde fault with Fortunes discourtesie, exclaymed on her vnkindnesse by pleading their owne innocencie; which whether it were with the inforcement penetrable, or that the Gods meant to shew their power in contrarieties (I dare not verdict) but presently to our amaze, & their pacification, a gallant calme succeeded, and the outward face of heauen suffered her blacknes to be wiped away, whereby it appeared like the milde mother of the earth; so that it was my good happe

to driue vnder the Walles of *Fortuna*, where a Fisher stood drying his Nettes, whom as I learnt afterwad, was the old *Piscaro*; and as I had cause to acknowledge, was the honest *Piscaro*: For seeing some strange thing floting a farre off, hee watched to helpe, if hee could; and graciously helped when hee could: So my safetie increased with his comfort; in which loth to appeare defectiue, hee had me presently to his House, confirming his Charitie by his good Workes.

Bertoes suffering shipwracke is taken vp by Piscarro & nameth Trezobero Egerus.

NOw when hee presumed on my strength, hee questioned with mee about my Shipwracke; and to be plaine, I made a round excuse, as though *Cleonidas* had set fire on my poore dwelling in *Persia*, and caried mee Prisoner to his *Iland*, till a tempest deuided vs, and sent mee floting, as hee found. I but (quoth *Piscarro*) would a Pirate permit you so much leasure to tie your Child to your backe, and giue you libertie to make such shift? Questionlesse (replyed I) you haue made a pretty doubt; yet must the truth thus resolue you, and fauour him, that out of furie, hee is most pittifull, and worthy of a good report. This was the excuse I made, and with this excuse was my peace made; so that I remayned with him a while rather willing to please, then to complaine of my owne discontentment: but when he found my endeuours consorting to his disposition, as though I ment to checke ingratitude, he professed a further liking,

liking, and very ſuddenly imparted his wealth vnto me: to be breife with him I continued ſome fiue yeeres not forgetting the bringing vp of my ſonne, who ſeemed of that forwardneſſe (as quickly learning and gracing whatſoeuer he learnt) that my contentment ſprang from his expectation: but this manner of life did not long laſt, becauſe *Piſcarro* lacked not himſelfe, as ſummoned to a ſtricter tryall by the irrevocable ſentence of death: and preparing for another world made an oueraffection adopt me his heyre in this world, & left a ſtranger to be ſubiect vnto their mallice, that ſaw me poſſeſſed of his wealth, which though it amounted to no great matter, yet I compaſſed the dwelling I now enioy, and was able to bring vp *Egerius*, as you all can partly witneſſe: But ſeeing the winges of time haue thus ſpread out themſelues, and the booke of heauenly reuolutions turneth to this leafe, let not vs degenerat with dulneſſe or wilfulneſſe, but take out a new leſſon, and with reuerence acknowledge him the *Emperor Mengrelius* Sonne, and remember his true name to be *Princely Trezobere*. For this is he, whom *Gelida* and *Perinthum* gaue me ſuch charge of.

But ſay *Coranus* (quoth King *Zalby*) after *Berioſus* was thus vnkindly ſeperated from you, what fauour found you amongſt the toſsing ſurges? Not much vnlike my brother (replied *Coranus*) only in being thus deuided my ſorrow the rather encreaſed, and I ſeemed to lament his loſſe, as

much

much as ſuſpect my owne danger: Now belike miſchiefe wery of her owne handyworke gaue liberty to an other, ſeeane to alter the act. For within two houres after, the calme preſented it ſelfe, I kenned a farre off a Fiſher boate; who conceiuing of our extremitie made as much haſt as my tongue did require their haſt: thus was I ſaued, and by their induſtry recouered, the old *Silenus* one of the Shepheards of the Downes commaunding it ſhould be ſo, and I was glad to finde it ſo, but more glad, when he brought vs home to his Houſe, where with louing care; and ſufficient meanes, wee had the comfortable effectes of good diligence, and honeſt looking vnto. But when I told him I was a man of Husbandry in *Armenia*, and was taken in a Paſſage-Boate by the Pirate *Cleonidas*, as I was trauelling into *Media* to an elder Daughter there beſtowed, with this Child, hee much pitied my diſtreſſe. But when I tolde him, ſeeing Fortune was ſo croſſe vnto me (& pouertie muſt needes prooue comberſome, and the diſcouerer of imperfections) I would take any paines in an other Country to helpe my wants, rather then be a ſcandall to my ſelfe, a laughing ſtocke to my Enemies, and ſcorne to my Friends; or at leaſt ſuch, as in former time profeſſed ſo; hee liked mee as a man of ſence, and added ſomewhat of his owne opinion. But when I told him, that the bond of his Kindneſſe had tyed mee to the ſtrict obſeruation of ſatisfaction; and that I

offered

offered him the fruit of my endeuors in his seruice, he tooke it in good part, made tryall of my industry, and welcommed me accordingly.

Coranus suffering shipwracke is taken vp by Selenus and nameth Brizaca Deltona.

There I remained vntill *Deltona* (for so I named *Brizaca*) was able to apprehend my instructions, and loth to let her loose the benefit of this towardlynesse I obtained of *Selenus* a Cottage by my selfe, wherin we liued, till she in her life florished, and I in her florishing prospered: For as if the graces had doated on her, each action she attempted was gratious, and I (as if fortune ment to turne her Wheele indeed,) in euery thing had good successe: in so much that with the admiration of her beautie & gallant behauiour *Deltona* obtained the chiefe place at the feast: & with regard of the companie, and my owne good vsage, the poore *Coranus* held the reputation you found him in: therefore (most Noble *Duke*) looke on her now with other eyes? for no longer *Deltona*, but the *Emperor Mengrelius* daughter; *Brizaca*.

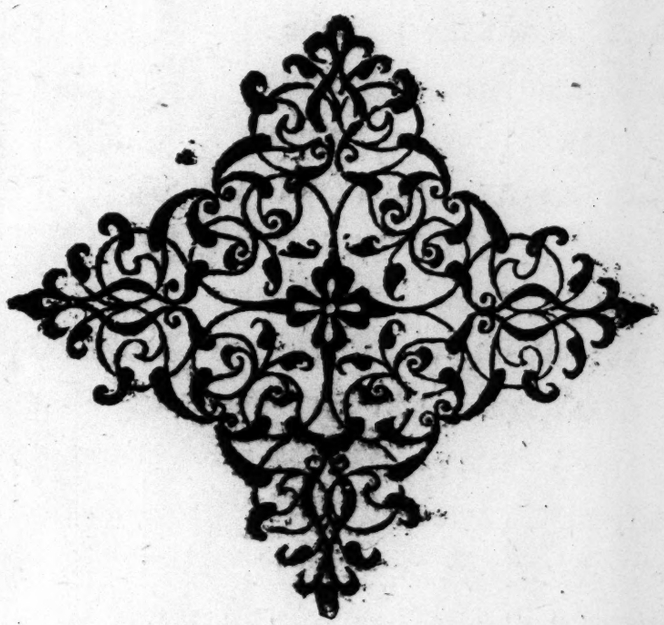
By that time *Coranus* concluded his discourse, a generall muttering was heard, and raised a manner of confusion amongst them, wherein we will leaue them, till the extasie haue end: and as they begin to conferre of the strangnesse, shall the time acquaint you with the story.

Finis Libri Secundi.

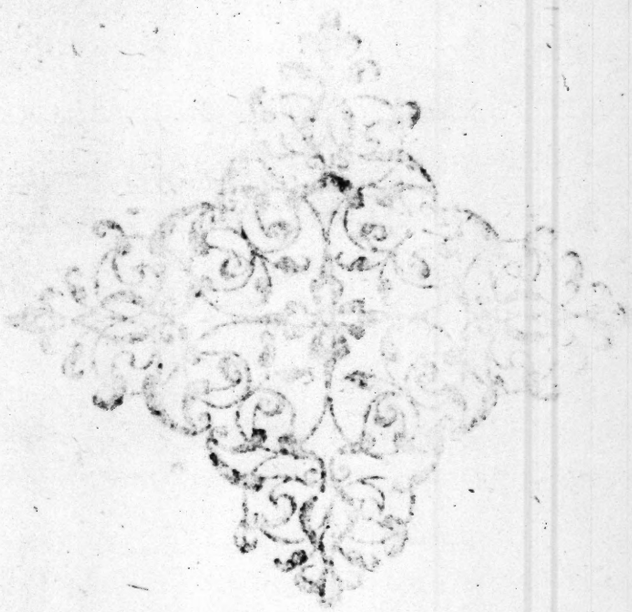
Tichborne.

163

THE THIRD BOOKE of the Hiſtorie OF TREBIZOND.



Imprinted at London by W. White,
for *T. Downes* and *E. Dawſon*.
1616.



THE THIRD BOOKE

To the honorable Lady, FRANCIS EGERTON.

HONORABLE LADY,

I Could flouriſh the colours of your Prayſes from Vertue, Beautie, Graceſulneſſe, Magnanimitie, and ſuch like enriching giftes of Nature: But at this time I will extend your worth no further, then that you are a faire promiſing Fruite of a glorious Tree; and ſo haue choſen you with the reſt, to ouer-ſhade mee from the tempeſtes of Detraction, conſidering I am now like a ceeled Doue to flye abroad with ſtrange diſguiſes, and haue as it were matriculated my ſelfe in the Schoole of Folly, by writing of Bookes: Yet if you will relieue it, as a poore caſt-out Orphan, *then are you charitable: If you entertaine it for any cauſe in it ſelfe, then doe you Iuſtice: If you pardon the faults, then are you Vertuous: If you protect it, then are you Heroyicall: Nay, if you make it contemptible, I ſhall impute it to my owne ill deſer-*

166 *wing, not any deficiencie in you. But casting these doubts aside, I am confident, that you will either giue me leaue to make vse of your Honorable supportation; or lift me vp your selfe with so strong an arme, that neither Enuie nor Derision of others, shall shoulder me aside from your acceptation; or come neere you, that are willing to be so gentle and gracefull vnto mee,*

Your Honors to commannd,

Th. Gainsforde.

The Third Booke of the Hiſtorie of TREBIZOND.

THe truth had no ſooner triumphed in *Deltonas* diſcouery, but ſeemed impatient at reſtraint, and therfore commaunded fame to diulge it abroad: yet who had at this inſtant beheld her, would haue ſworne ſhee ment to participate to ſome excellent artiſt a very patterne of modeſty and humilitie rather then ſtate and magnificenſe: For there neither appeared alteration, nor any new countenance; only that which ſeemed new, was a manner of ſcorne to thinke, how a vaine titell ſhould produce ſuch regard before vertue and deſert: Neither would ſhe haue admitted thoſe ceremonies, had not *Egerim* now her brother *Trezoboro* perſwaded, that „ though a diamond (howſoeuer ſet forth) is ſtill „ pretious, and a ſtone of eſtimation: yet arteficially „ polliſhed maketh apparant a greater luſtre, and „ augmenteth the vallue and ſufficiencie: So no „ doubt vertue & beautie in *Deltona Coranus* Child, „ were guiftes of ſingular delight and account, but in *Brizaca* the *Emperor Mengrelius* daughter, they were perfections and excellencies of admiration: thus ſhe was contented to diſmiſſe her former

Deltona thus reuealed doth not yet forget Montanus: but confeſſeth her loue.

mer stilnesse & feare; & appeared, as if maiestie had framed a worke of ostentation, which made the king, *Duke*, and the rest, burdon ignorance with the error of their slight respect, and desired her to pardon the former negligence: to this she was soone directed, and by her excellent behauiour, gaue notice of all those additions, which make *Princes* famous to their eternall renowme.

In the time of this celebration, *Montanus* seemed forgotten: For euery one busied themselues with the matter in hand. The king to gratifie *Rugio* to purchase attonement, *Trebord* to acknowledge a Sister, *Philano* to honour his friend, *Coranus* in recounting of secrets, and *Bertosus* in discouering of circonstances: so that *Montanus* too curiously stomaching the operation of ioy extended altogether toward another, entertained an vnkind suspition of her neglect, which made him retyre to *Bertosus* house, where his meditation was quickly welcomed to Ielosy and misdoubt, had not *Coranus* brought him tidinges of better consequence vpon this occation.

Brizaca setled in glorious alteration, began to ransacke the Closet of affection, and found the remembrance of *Montanus* mourning, that there seemed neede of a new search, which made her challenge the company for his losses as if she ment to giue them notice, that on his safetie depended her chiefest content. Now was a new hurliburly in the Pallace, and a new humor in the *Duke*, they

busied

busied in the execution of her pleasure, and he repining to finde a concurrent in his loue: For if before her Comlinesse and Beautie had withdrawne Power from an incontinent libertie, now her Greatnesse and Maiestie rather inflamed, then enamoted; which suggested emulation against *Montanus*, and might haue nourished those despights encreasing betweene riuals, had not the presence of *Brizaca* caused the returne of better consideration, and her last deniall assured shee was engaged with the bond of Fayth toward him.

Thus was *Rugio* imperiously ruled, and for her » pleasure displeasingly pleased: so he sent *Coranus* » and *Bertosus* abroad, who comming home, found » *Montanus* in a manner ouercharged with griefe. » Why how now (quoth *Bertosus*,) is this the con- » querour of Misfortune? and terrour of Licenti- » ousnesse? Did you exclaime against *Rugio*, to our » amase, and disquiet the King with your heroyicke » reprehention? Is *Brizaca* lesse regarded an Em- » perours Daughter, then when shee was *Deltona*, » the reputed Child of *Coranus*? Where is Courage and Magnanimitie? Where is Hope and Resolution? Where is Loue and Delight? See Loue, (replyed *Montanus*) but little Delight: For what goodnesse can I expect, when at the very first, Disdaine and Contempt proceeded against mee? no man more deseruing, no man lesse regarded. Tush (answered *Bertosus*) Imagination is the mo-

ther of Trouble; let me therefore bring these glad tidings, that how-euer the strangenesse wrought in vs, and extasy was effectuall in them; yet is *Brizaca* honourable, constant, and resolute toward you. Toward mee (quoth *Montanus*,) how can a Shepheard bee remembred amongst Princes? Truly (sayd *Coranus*) if I may speake without offence, ouer-liberally credulous of your Promise, shee reprehended mee for your absence, and sware shee would forget her new name, if it should be an obstacle to her desires. Well (said *Montanus*) I allow of the deceit, and am content to checke my suspition: I request you therefore like men, let vs beleeue the Gods remaine vncontroulable; and " like friendes, suffer mee to make this vse of your " kindnesse, to certifie *Delton* (for as yet I dare not " name *Brizaca*) that my life and loue dependeth " on her respect; whereon I will aduance the tro- " phes of Honour, when that sleeping Fame shall " awake to tell her, *Montanus* is no lesse then a Monarch: In the meane while, I present her my Heart; but must absent my Bodily presence. Nay, reply not? For Heauen concludeth, my *Genius* " perswadeth, and I am vnchangeable. With that, " hee hasted out of the Cittie, and left them to mar- " uell at the wilfulnesse.

Montanus departeth from Fortona.

" Thus they returned to the Court, assuring the " Duke hee was not to be found: But imparting to " *Brizaca* the matter as it chanced, and the manner, " as the circumstances effected; in commending

with;

withall his care (exceeding all other care) to be restored to the possession of happinesse: This somewhat setled her feare, and yet troubled her opinion, considering she could not apprehend, whither hee should goe, vnlesse to *Placandus*. In the meane while, *Trezoboro* and the *Duke*, concluded to proclaime their discouerie in all the Kingdomes adioyning; which *Rugio* consented vnto, as well to make his endeauours plead his affection and desert to *Brizaca*, as to amplifie his renowne both abroad and at home: whereupon many Messengers assured diuers Princes, that truth and strangenesse had sent them; and they according to the nature desiring nouelties, by Commission or rather Warrants of safe conduct came to *Fortona*, ere the limitted time had fully spred her winges, and were welcommed accordingly: so that such as professed in chiualrie, made their cost rather extend to necessitie then wantonnesse; and such as had their Fancies tyed to other subiectes, seemed doubly charged, to make a mixture of armes and delight; but when the day approached, wherein glory determined a solemne inauguration, the entercourse of people gaue notice, as if they went to the Pallace of Honour, and the Duke added to his greatnesse and euerlasting fame, both by his demeanour and expences. In this manner proceeded the Triumph, and the Iudges of the Field were conducted to an imperiall Tent, equally deuiding the Listes, which were King *Zalby*: *Orcanus*

Lord of the Blew Ilands: and *Nesterius* Prince of *Oxidracan*: the Ladyes discharging their nicetie, were as ready as the multitude, and the Knights came triumphantly forward: Amongst whom the defendants shall receiue this sparing commendation, that their outward brauery and gallantnesse, made the beholders suppose it sumptuous, and the person vnknowne, was worthily liked for his honourable minde and good intent: As for the Challengers (how euer some censor doe except against the time, which had not yet ripened inuention) they may not so slightly ouerpasse my remembrance.

Ligornio heire and hope of *Bactriana* brother in law to *Rugio*, and newly betrothed to the faire *Ramira*, a daughter of *Artaxerxes Prince* of *Susiana*, had his Caparison of a Sea colour, satten, so arteficially embrodered with a tempestuous water deuided into broken waues by the purling of the Silke and Siluer, that the contention arose, whether the cost or the cunning exceeded: for at euery corner of the Quarters, you might descry a Shippe in harbour of safetie. The Mott was: *Tandem*.

Sacromirus sonne of *Hircania*, ware a purple Veluet, all spotted and embrodred with *Panthers*; but so done, as wee well might know, *Hircania* affoorded this Beast exceeding other Countries, and hee affected them surpasing other men, as if hee meant to discouer, that looke what property

Nature

Nature bestowed vpon them; hee assumed to him selfe. The Mott: *Si saturatus mitis.*

Seleucus heyre of *Margiana*, on a curious Cloth of Siluer had in diuers places a Rocke deciphered, resembling that, which protected the Country from inuasion, and assured; the place it selfe was also impreguable. The Mott: *Hoc cape et regna.*

Belnidus the sonne of *Carmania*, bare a Peach-colour Veluet purled ouer with siluer and gold Wier; but so artificially wrought, that you might perceiue a cut off Head on an Altar, as if hee meant to tell vs, that Loue was there obtained with the price of their enemies Heads The Mott: *Sic amor conquiritur.*

Culanus King of *Sogdiana*, hauing matched with the heroyicall *Tarina* Queene of *Saca*, thought no scorne to blazon her excellencies, and therefore on a Watchet Satten embost with Gold had her resemblance portrayed, and himselfe kneeling before her, wherein the chiefest care consisted to decipher, that Beautie and Valour, had doubly enforced his yeelding vnto her. The Mott: *Non pudet vinci.*

Philano sonne to *Bugia* on an Azure Damaske, bare a resplendant Sun, so excellently embost, that the very Rayes gaue shew of a glorious light; but when we perceiued certaine Cloudes of Silke and Siluer, as it were thrust into a corner, wee then remembred a greater force might put a weaker enemie to retreat. The Mott: *Sic gloria desidiam.*

Trezoboro on a ruſſet Veluet cut in piereed maſcelles vpon azure Perſian ſtuffe, had diuers Crownes of Gold-ſmiths worke; ouer whom an Enameled eye ſeemed to take the charge. The Mott: *Quis amittet?*

The *Duke* himſelfe ware on an Orenge ſatten an embrodred Arme, ſhaking a Sword out of a fiery Cloude, and ſo wrought, as if it receiued life from a Heart threatning deſpight. The Mott: *Vindicta.*

Thus paſſed the Ceremonies of this Triumph; wherein is to be obſerued, that Valure and Delight made before-hand a bargaine with Miſchaunce, not to enter the Liſtes, or any way to impeach the Iollitie, being a thing determined for ſhow and pleaſure: Yet when it came to execution, the broken Lawnces flew into the ayre, corning the compaſſe of a ſmall hold. The Horſes wearied with ill managing, diſburdened themſelues of their vnfortunate Maſters. The Knights actiue in their ſeuerall encounters, (louing Virtue for her owne ſake) deſiſted not for one repulſe; but againe and againe made their tryall: Amongſt whom, *Rugio* enforced himſelfe beyond expectation (as caryed with a paſſionate violence toward *Brizaeda*;) for though hee had broken fourty Lawnces, and ouerthrowne ſixteene Knights; yet ſcorned hee a furceance, till the fortune of the day confirmed the Prize to his worth: But as his forwardneſſe inſulted with his merit, a ſuddaine hurliburly at the Weſt ende of the Tilt, ex-

poſed

posed new matter of variety, and came thus to passe.

Montanus commeth to Placandus: his father & prepareth himselfe against the Triumph.

Montanus went directly to his father *Placandus*, ouer whom seuerall feares and sorrowes for the murder of *Franio*, and the dissipation of his friendes had an vntoward gouernment: but it was quickly deposed by the returne of *Montanus*, who by this time was welcommed, as if a traueler hauing left a louing wife in the seuerall mistrustes of a dangerous viage paste hope of returning presented himselfe by miracle vnto her: which occationed some ceremony of kindnesse, as well to strengthen the opinion of *Placandus* toward him, as to satisfie his curiosity, which neuer left ouer burdning him with questions: Wherupon he tould the old man of the *Dukes* stealing *Deltona*, her scorne and *Franios* trechery: he tould the old man, *Coranus* had found a brother, himselfe was entertained with *Bertosus*, and what had chanced concerning *Egerius*: he tould the old man *Mengrelius* story, king *Zalbys* comming to the Court, and *Deltonas* with her brothers discouery: he tould the old man the entertainement, which followed, the embassage concluded on, and the triumph proclamed, whither he was resolued to goe; which when *Placandus* rather wondred at, then impugned, hee told the old Man of his misfortunes, the fight

with

with *Cleonidas*, and his right to the kingdome of *Armenia*: To be breefe he tould the old man he was the Prince *Anzitemus*, of his contract at *Mengrelius* Caue, and how *Deltona* remained irremoueable, and vnaltred: of which though the ſtrangneſſe ſlacked his beleefe, yet was the truth ſo modeſtly vrged, & the likelyhood of his ſpeeches concurred with ſuch ſmothneſſe, that *Placandus* reioyced in the hope to find it ſo, and with a gladſome contraryetie ſeemed officious vnto him, as if he knew it was ſo: But when the next morning rumored the like circumſtances, he then obſerued all the partes of loue and ſecrecy, and according to his directions made ready Mony of his Cattell, moueables and ſuch like he poſſeſſed, with which *Montanus* furniſhed himſelfe, as conueniently as he could, and at the time appoynted came into the field with a Capariſon curiouſly emboſt with watchet ſilke and gold counterchangeably layed vpon the ſame coulour *Perſian* ſtuffe; his deuiſe a lawrell florifhing vnder a tempeſtuous Element, the Mote: *Salua tamen.*

Montanus commeth to the Triumph vnknowne.

Thus with a ſeemely Trot he paced to the Tilt, as if he determined to grace their expectation with a thing of ſome rarenceſſe: For the Horſe commaunded manifeſted a ſcorne of wantonneſſe by a ſtately ſobrietie; and he commaunding, managed the beaſt without any wreſted moulnges or enforced reſtraintes: nor was the *Duke* much diſcontented with his approach (his courage enterpreting

terpreting it a pollecie of Honour to adde more fethers to the Wings of Fame, becauſe he had alredy made tryall of as good men at armes as any in *Aſia*: yet very loth, that miſchance ſhould make a mixture with that dayes glory, he ſhifted his weary Horſe, and tooke him to an old Bay, whichrather (as if time had altered the coulour) ſeemed a perfect Cheſſe-nut, and ſo ſupplyed the roome againe, attending the ſommons of victory.

But when the Ladyes were made acquainted with the noueltie, ſtrange was their deſier to know him, ſtrange was their griefe, that none could ſatisfie their deſier: As for the peerleſſe *Brizaca*, though ſhe could haue wiſhed him *Montanus*; and withall, remembred the good of *Montanus*: yet not able to thinke, what treaſurie in a place vnknowne, had opened her doores, ſhe deſiſted from ſuppoſing him *Montanus*: But whether, becauſe her minde had runne on *Montanus*, or that the nature of well wiſhing extendeth to the weaker ſide; ſhe once againe allowed him *Montanus*; and praied accordingly for the ſame ſucceſſe, as if it had beene to *Montanus*; but the Trumpets ſound gaue warning to put her other ſenees in practiſe; and ſo the firſt courſe began, which paſſed both with liking to the beholders, and aſtoniſhment to *Rugio*, becauſe they perceiued a ſweeter cleanneſſe in the diuiſion, and hee felt a quicker ſtrength in his deliuery: yet knowing

"conceit was a weakning of courage, and the least
"aduantage, descried a step to Conquest, hee made
ready againe, and so fiue times togeather with
sufficient equality concluded, and might surely
haue triumphed without impeachment, consi-
dering the deeds of Armes, with whose applause
he had filled all mens eares the day before: but
that the Saddle at the sixt encounter scorned the
weakenesse of his Strappes, and vnworthily dis-
burdened it selfe of so worthy a Master; who see-
med somewhat perplexed to be so disappoynted,
yet was pacefied in the displeasure, when the rest
receiued the same payment.

In this manner was Glory satisfied to see the
Vertue of this new Knight accompanied with
"good successe, and so the Iudges with semblant
"suffrages, yeelded the honour of the triumph vn-
"to him: But hee vtterly disclaymed to assume it,
"considering the *Duke* had continued longest in
the Field, and hee came like an Enemie in *ambus-
cado*, espying the best aduantage for his sallying
foorth. To this *Rugio* opposed, as much pleased
with his respect, as opinion of the rest: especially
considering his hopes toward *Brizaca* were fru-
strate, and therefore led him vp in great royalty to
receiue the Prize: where the admirable Princesse,
accompanied with many worthy Lapyes expec-
ted, to whose portion Fortune would allot it: But
when a full interuiew had taken away the vaile
of doubtfulnesse, it was no kind entertainement,

but

but a ſence rauiſhing ioy publiſhed him *Montanus*, wherein ſhee might haue paſſed the limits of moderation, if *Trezoboro* had not ſommoned her to put her other graces in practiſe. Now when *Montanus* found him ſelfe the cauſe of this confuſed ſilence, and turmoyle, hee thought it high time to polliſh the rough way, and lead them to a plaine Field of his knowledge; whereupon hee vſed this preamble. Let not (great Princes) too » ſuddaine a cenſure paſſe vpon my preſumption » or negligence; but rather be incenſed againſt Ig- » norance, and my owne Misfortunes, if reſpect haue » not paſſed with her properties: But becauſe you » haue already participated with the diſcouery of » this peereleſſe Princeſſe, and yet ſtill continue as a » longing and louing Mother for the returne of an » other Sonne, affoord mee a litle patience, and I » will fill vp the meaſure of your hopes: Yet in re- » gard the Iourney I vndertake is tedious, and this » dayes trauell importuneth repoſe, I will diſpence awhile with the time, and procraſtinate your deſires till to morrowes conueniencie: But very quickly is the Sunne inſeoffed with the nights inheritance, and *Trezoboro* in his ſiſters behalfe (ſtomaching the delay, hee thought *Montanus* made) challenged his honourable Promiſe, and accompanied him to King *Zalby*, the Duke, and reſt of the Princes; who by this, furniſhed a roome of State, wherein the chiefeſt things worthy regard was ſtrange expectation: So that after *Bri-*

zaca with her princely assistants, had enriched the place, *Montanus* with a solemne Maiestie rose vp, and with the ceremony of a reuerent obeysance to them, a mannerly chearefulnesse to her, and sweet affabilitie to the rest, thus began.

The History of Artabazes and Olmus.

WHom so euer remembrance fauoreth with the occurrences of an age forepassed, must needes either read, or heare of the famous victories of *Armenus* surnamed the great, whose vallure subiected diuers resisting powers, and gaue name to the Country to his obedience reduced: In which hee had not long aduanced the Standard of imperiousnesse, but amongst others, erected two especiall Cities *Sagarena*, and *Artaxata*: The first, corresponding to his Fathers: the second, to her Name; for whose sake the Country submitted to a Strangers wroth. In these hee constituted Lawes for the Common-wealth, and Orders for the Court; which although seemed repugnant to the peoples dispositon, by reason they sauored of new inuention, and combined them to a strictnesse, rather wresting their obedience, then animating their loyalties: Yet the good vse by his ouerlooking, sealed their grudgings, and established him in a florishing prosperitie; which though misfortune began to impugne by some slender reuolts, and the losse of the royall *Artaxata*; yet was fully reintigrated in a second Mariage with the magnanimous

nimous *Talmiranda* Queene of *Assiria*; with whom hee spent the dayes of his yeares, and the yeares of his glory, glorying so much the more, because Nature imparted her Bountie in many particulers, and Time made the vpshot with expectable issue: For his Sonnes, *Artabazes* and *Olmus* shewed in their bringing vp great hope, and in their Fathers life Honourable gouernment: But the aged *Armenus* must satisfie his debt to the whole worlds creditor, & leaue them in the world like Waxe wrought with a warme hand ready for any impression. At last, sorrow outpassed the time of her ceremonious sadnesse, and the noble *Artabazes* without difficultie or repining, inuested him selfe with the royalties of both *Armenias*, *Assiria*, and many Prouinces annexed to his Empire; and so two especiall occasions lifted vp their heades to make them selues knowne to the King: The one, a Celebration of his Mariage with *Euphamia* heyre of *Arach* and the thred *Arabias*: The other, a forme of Gouernment, as well to maintaine his Fathers good proceedings, as to auoyde the suspition of his owne weakenesse. In this, after extreamitie compelled a strong Armie to ouerturne *Cleonidas* House and confederates, euery one applawded his method and manner, and the people were carried with admiration toward him, the rather because he assured, that the like iust libe should be distributed as well to the poore as rich, & made his owne example a *magnes* to draw forward the

steelliest disposition: But when by many particulars tending to a perfect establishment, they found their peace and plentie to florish, then were they violently carryed with zeale, duty, and reuerence: and truly (most mighty Princes) how euer some enuious hand did afterward cast poyson into his vertuous Spring, hee questionlesse layed a sure foundation, as your selues (if you will affoord mee a little patience) may witnesse.

For the first thing he vndertooke, was the peopling a mighty Citty in the hart of his Realme, and erecting a sumptuous Pallace in the middest of the Towne; that a reseptacle of all sorts, whom controuersies compelled to tryall of Lawes, this ordained to especiall persons, whom honour incited to follow the Court. The Buildings not yet so much beautified with externall curiousnesse, as firme statelinesse: and the Pallace an inuention of glory and eternity: as hauing sure walles, well proportioned largnesse, stately lightes, easy Staires, great Entries, Princely Galleryes, conuenient Lodginges, wide and magnificent gates, apartes Offices, holsome walkes, sweete Gardens, and dellicate Nurseries: But what was this to the scituation & polliticke aduancement, the ground worke it selfe mounted two Furlonges higher then the other buildinges, and the metation finished with the circuit of a Thousand yardes, all contained within the deepenesse of a double Moat to which industry of man had drawne vp the violence

lence of many ſpringes, and the circomference of a triple Wall: yet did a ſtealing hill in ſuch ſoft vpriſing direct thee, that what with the brauery of the Marbell paued ſtreetes, and the comlineſſe of the euen built houſes waling foure great wayes of two hundred foot in breadth, eight hundred yardes in length from the Cittie gate to the firſt Pallace wall, thou wouldeſt haue been delighted in the iorny, and wondred with what pleaſure thou hadſt attained to ſuch height: thus was it ſtronge to with ſtand inſurrection, and in the mideſt for the better commaund of the Cittie, and eaſier prouiſion of the Pallace: like the heart enuironed with the body, and the nouriſher of life to all the members, they flouriſhing by the ſtrength of it, and that proſpering by the good order of them: Thus was it princely to reſuſcitate regarde, becauſe the ſtate of Maieſtie may not be confounded with communitie, but retaine ſpeciall reuerence. Thus was it named *Armamiranda* that the people in remembring their well affected *Prince* might conceiue he forgot not his much deſeruing parentes.

The next matter of import was to vnuaile the groſeneſſe of errors, and to reduce the gouernment to vniformitie, which conſiſting in the admittance of vertue and men louing vertue for vertues ſake, ſelected ſuch, whoſe integritie of life, and prudent directions warranted their worth for any purpoſe, as for follie either of her ſelfe loth-

ſome,

ſome, or bewitched with impietie abhominable, ſhe was altogeather baniſhed: the perſon whoſoeuer reiected for the imperfection, and the imperfection imputed rather to ſcorne of diſcipline, then naturall defect. This made the good goe forward in a well troden path, and the bad deſiſt from accouſtomed ill life, to which they were as it were directed, by reaſon ſo great a king made himſelfe exemplary by his owne vprightneſſe in iudgment, trueth of word, repoſedneſſe of ſpeech, cheareſulneſſe of aſpect, ſecrecie of buſineſſe imparted, tolleration of inconueniences, reſolution of enterpriſes, heroyicke proceedinges in matters of Armes, conſtancie in affliction, and at all times reuerence towrad the Gods.

The officers of his houſe were ſuch, whoſe demeanour ſollicited Honour to remember their worth, or vertue beautified, that Honour before collated to them: yet was no man truſted to the libertie of his owne will, but receiued theſe inſtructions, to accknowledge the dignitie of a kinges perſon, to maintaine the ſecretes of ſtate and Court, to perpetrate no fact incurring the crime of Maieſty, to detract no time nor occaſion, which might ſet foorth the honour of his kingdome, to admit no vnworthy perſon, as an officer in Court, to hinder no mans aduancement, that had merited his place, and to depraue, nor depriue no complainant, till his cauſe were iudicially heard.

His

His prouidence appoynted a Hundred Senators, as Presidents of Prouinces dispersed through the Empire; to whom he committed Causes of incombrances, and Petitions of the people; not yet withdrawing himselfe from Controuersies of importance, nor forbidding to speake, whom Iniuries enforced; so that the Proude and Mighty were depressed, the Weake and Innocent comforted, and the Worthily regarded, confirmed.

The Priestes had charge to watch late, to rise early, to be spare of Diet, sober in speaking, patient in suffering, holy in conuersation, feruent in execution of Sacrifice, impartiall in reprehention, vntainted with priuate malice, no hoorders of Treasure, administers of wants, and keepers of their owne houses.

The Noble-men reziant in their Countries receiued these instructions, To haue their Houses stored with seruiceable Attendants, such as should neither be rash, quarrellers, lyers, blasphemers, gluttonous, gamesters, lecherous, or infamed: All which might be easily auoyded, or quickly preuented, if they themselues were milde, honest, sober, silent, patient, familiar, and deuoute: neither murmuring at the haunts of Brothers, Vncles, Coosins, and all other of their kin; nor denying to succour the necessities of poore Allies; or supplying the wantes of crauing Strangers, whose enforced aduersitie deserued compassion.

The Iudges of the Kingdome, and Iustices of

each diuiſion were preſcribed rules touching them ſelues, and had a commiſsion concerning others: touching themſelues in no ſort to be irregular, not lauiſh in tauntes, not arrogating vnproper titles: no vtterers of baſe reproches, no nouriſhers of impatience, no deriders of former inſtances, no deſpiſers of ciuillitie, nor others ignorance, and aboue all no deniers of iuſtice, nor ſtrangers to religion: concerning the people to make ſtronge weakneſſe, to commend courage, to prouide before enforcement, to chaſtiſe diſſolution, to ſuccour in time, to appeaſe ſedition, to obſerue conformitie, to cleare ſuſpition, to remedie beuineſſe, and to temper the momentary ioyes of proſperity.

The Gent: whoſe youth added luſtineſſe to deſire, and ſufficiency to willingneſſe, were aduiſed (with this caueat not to ſurpaſſe their degrees, or endanger their eſtates) to learne moralitie, as an ornament of the minde, and practiſe to be actiue for the enabling their bodies, either to Courtly paſtimes, as the Prince delighted, or to Warres neceſſitie, as the Common wealth enforced, whereby was put in vſe the running of raſes, the ſwiftneſſe of Footmanſhip, the wraſtling by armes, the breaking of Horſes, the ſleight of the Launce, the caſting of Dartes, the benefit of Slinges, the ſtroke of the Sword, the wearing of Armour, and the aduantage of other weapons: beſides the ſpare time of Countries repoſe was

beſtowed

beſtowed in taming of Beaſtes by pollicy, force, deuiſe of Toyles, deceite of pittes, courſing of Dogges, or cunning of Horſmanſhip: In catching Fowles by counterfeit of Voyce, limings of buſh, placing of Ginnes, and exerciſe of Hauking: In ſnaring of Fiſh, by ſkill of Hooke, groping by hand, caſting the Net, opening the ſluce, or poyſoning the poole.

The Marchant was made acquainted to trauell abroad, to obſerue his Martes, to learne nauigation, to abſtaine from curioſity, to apply himſelfe to the place of his Trade, to exchange his commodities, to be certaine of his admittance, and to make difference in the choiſe of his Marchandiſe, according to the variety of Countries, each affording natures bountie, and the earthes plentie,

The Countri-man had theſe informations to till the ground, to Plough their ſeaſons, to Sow their Corne, to reape the bleſſings, to howſe their Stuffe, to order their Cattell, to Plant fruite, to ſow Acorns, to ſet Wood, to quicke Ditches, to draine Marſhes, to ſtocke Rootes, to caſt Pondes, to ſheate Sheepe, to trim Wooll, to weaue Cloth, to ſpinne Linnin, to dreſſe Hony, and to practiſe whatſoeuer labour might attaine to, or conceite imagine.

The Artificers were imployed to build ſtrongly, to Wall with ſtone, to ſtrengthen with Iron, to make warme with Glaſſe, to heaw Timber, to burne Brickes, to graue in Mettall, to caſt Armour,

to digge Mines, to ſearch Welles, to deuiſe for Shipes, to Tann Leather, and to furniſh townes: ſo that nothiug was left vndone, which belonged to the vſe of man, nor any thing done according not to reaſon and wiſdome.

Thus (noble Princes) flouriſhed the Common-wealth fiue *Luſtrums* together, vntill a wanton Securitie ſet on worke the worſt part of mans maliciouſneſſe, and made euery paltry Controuerſie rather a wicked Cauell, then a neceſſary Complaint: For in ſhort time, many Sycophants grew in the Common-wealth, (like ſome ſtrange Diſ-
" eaſe on an infected body, which either careleſneſſe
" or wilfulneſſe neglected to cure, vntill it became
" vlcerous and paſt redreſſe,) who neuer deſiſted
" from wrong information betwixt Neighbour and Neighbour; whereby they began in Diſpleaſure, and ended in Deſpight. Many ambitious ſpirits not able to beare out themſelues, ſuffred Enuie to intangle one another with infinite outrages; ſo that if one Cauſe were determined, ten Actions were commenced: and many diueliſh Polliticians prying vnder-hand into the demeanors of men, either brought them within apparant Default, or ſuborned Witneſſe againſt them as, infringers of the Law; whereby euery man feared the conuerſation hee kept, and repining Hurliburlies in a manner mutinied againſt the permitters: but eſpecially when the King (growing mightie and rich, by reaſon diuers aduantages brought them

them within penaltie of ſome Statute and Forfetures,) became ſomewhat careleſſe in ſuch particulars, as before his Father and him ſelfe had ouerlookt: Then were vnder Officers left like vnskilfull Pilots in a dangerous Voyage; and there aroſe a very feare of confuſion amongſt the people, and lacked but a Head to draw them into action; which though it was not iuſtifiable in the wrong courſe ſo to bee vndertaken, yet was to be pitied in the reaſons, they inferred of redreſſe.

For ſpeaking the truth, the men in authority (eſpetially to whom the determining of controuerſies weare appoynted) not onely made benefit of the contentions of the people, but for the inſatiableneſſe of the benefit ſubuerted the firſt good intent of the lawes with quillites and detracting, being cunning indeed in nothing but detracting: beſides, touching priuat humours, this ridiculous groſſeneſſe chaunced, that where their owne originalls were for the moſt part baſe and obſcure, they in the ſcorne and inueighing againſt others, laboured yet to ennoble themſelues and their Children: Heere alſo was added the errors of higher officers euery one ſtriuing to aduance his friend and follower to ſuch places, which other men expected for deſert, or had wonne with time of ſeruice and attendancie; nor was this ſufficient, but the Common wealth was burthened with ſtrange impoſitiones, & diuers *Monopolies* brought

only benefite to ſome few perſons to the generall repining and complaint of the kingdome: For the better ſort ſtomached to ſee their honour checked and controuled: The men of Armes disdained to be vſed like flowers, which are worne " while they keepe their ſcent, but caſt on the Dung- " hill neuer ſo little fading: The religious, like their " profeſsion, were rather eſteemed for a pollecie to keepe the people in awe, then in neceſſity to tremble at any iudgment to come: other Artiſts poore for lacke of practiſe, and therefore deſpiſed: the Countryman ſtoubborne, malitious, and yet outwardly humble enough, vnderſtanding but by others inſtructions, and a little ſoothed, brought into a Fooles Paradiſe: Only the Citiſen made good ſhift, by reaſon nauigation was to be maintained, and the entercourſe of people beſtowed their Mony amongſt them: yet deſiſted they not from ſiniſter meanes in gathering of wealth, and cruell extremitie in extorting aduantages, quickly ſuggeſted by baſe Brokers and petty Lawiers, who in the end made them reſemble that enui- " ous man, who wiſhed one of his eyes to be puld " out, ſo his companion might loſe both, which " wrought ſo great feare (by reaſon Conſcience accuſed them of ſo many faultes,) that they quickly fined themſelues, and when there was no ſuch thing meant, conſented to any impoſition to maintaine their liberties,

Thus grew the name of Lawyer and Officer more

more hatefull, then orderly execution: For their Pride and Wealth made them reſpect no body but themſelues; nor any thing, but their owne profite: Now when Pride and Couetouſneſſe were yoked togeather, like vntamed Heifers vnder the hand of an vnskilfull workeman, the Plough went quickly aſide with ill holding, and the Common-wealth grew full of Weedes for lacke of ſeaſonable tillage; which was a long time marked, and as long concealed by the Kings brother *Olmus*, who quickly apprehended the miſlike of the people, and as quickly entertained ſome ſtrange hope in the apprehenſion; nor wanted their meanes and helpes to betray his conceite. For ſome induced him to take the defence of the people into his hands; others diſperſed Libels of defamation againſt the State: Some whiſpered againſt the King for not reforming theſe enormities; others dared to buzze in the peoples eares, that *Olmus* was of an other diſpoſition; who in deed by this time, affecting a kind of popularitie, ſoothed each complaint with a pittifull behauiour toward many Suters, and fayre Promiſes to ſtand them in what ſtead he could: whereupon they flocked on heapes, and made interceſsion, hee would protect the Common-wealth, offering their liues and goods in profuſe manner vnto him.

Olmus the Kinges Brother beginneth an innouation.

When

Artabazes, ſtomaching his Brothers preſumption will not indure it, but Kills him in the Hurliburly.

WHen *Artabazes* vnderſtood the truth, and that *Euphamia* pleaded the hazard of her ſelfe and Children, he durſt not giue way vnto the miſchiefe, for there was no ſitting ſtill in hearing of Innouation, but publiſhed an apparant miſlike of theſe beginnings, and proclaimed againſt his Brother, for taking a wrong courſe and cauſe in hand: Now? becauſe the ielowſie ſprung from the hazard of his Crowne and dignity, it burſt foorth into flames of Deſpight; with which he ment to conſume him, had not ſome ſpeciall Coadiutors vnderpropped his ambition, wherby he was a while reſerued, like a man traterouſly aſiſted to the Top of an high tree, that his fall might be the greater, when they liſt to tumble him downe, for preſently diuers ciuell Warres enſued, which the people with great feare and charges maintained, and *Olmus* with extremitie and policy continued, as fully reſolued, that the fault now aggrauated would neuer admit reconſiliation: ſo metime paſſed in this buſineſſe, wherin all mediocrity ouerpaſſed (both Country and Citties ſuffering the wrecke of the miſchiefe) wherupon a truce was taken, and the king ſeemed contented to haue their greeuances heard, for which a ſolemne meeting was appoynted at *Sagarena*: but *Artabazes* incenſed to be thus Coorb'd, as he thought, would by no meanes admitte of other Courſe, then his owne pleaſure, perſwading his great

great heart, or at least his great heart perswading him, that the authority of Kings consisted in commanding, and not in being ouerruled by audatious disobedience: with which quicke conceit he ouershott to dispute or Reason the matter, and so by forcible entrie broke into the consistory, with a strong hand dismissing the Counsell, amongst whom finding his vnhappy brother, he made the case more Lamentable, because he slew him himselfe, and that the company in a place priuiledged were vnable to reuenge it, who yet performed, what they durst, and durst doe no more, then exclaime on the action. *Artabazes Killeth his brother Olmus.*

But the king careleſſe of any mans repining, retyred his forces to the Principall fortreſſe, ſuſpecting what a mutinous Multitude might vnaduiſedly yeeld vnto, eſpecially hauing already entertained miſlike, and now confounded with new action of diſtruſtes, which accordingly came to paſſe. For the Cittie diſmayed with the report of *Olmus* death, and terrefied with the ſpeeches of diuers, who gaue out that the King ment preſently to ſacke it, miſdoubted their owne ſaftie, and were vrged to Muſter their forces to ſaue their liues, which *Geſtarius* incited them vnto (a Minnion of the ſlaughtered Prince) and with a ſlender inuectiue quickely exaſperated their diſpleaſure. But heere Fortune laughed, firſt to ſee a man of iudgement deceiued in an idle choyce: and then the world bewitched to be caried out of *The ſtory of Geſtarius.*

the ſmooth path of Obedience by a blind guide into the ſtony and craggy ſtreights of Innouation. For concerning the man, hee was in great credite about *Olmus*; yet neither birth allowing the fauour of a Court, nor education meriting any extraordinaie liking, onely readineſſe of Lip-labour adioyning ſome outward pleaſantneſſe to many abrupt ſpeaches (of them-ſelues, neither in another gracious, nor from another allowable) made the ouercredulous Prince continue his loue; becauſe hee had begun his liking, and admit the perſon for pleaſing his fancie, loth to reiect ſo great hope, as his cunning perſwaded: and vnwilling to bring his firſt Iudgement in queſtion, which had ſo much ouerruled him. Touching his Action: as ſoone as ſilence was pittifully entreated, hee ſeemed to excruciate him ſelfe with ſorrow, and began to vtter his minde, yet could not for deepe ſighs, nor ſigh long for many teares; which proceeding from affection, detained him awhile in ſome abruptneſſe, till at laſt the ſtrength of his deſire to Reuenge, gaue libertie to the tongue thus to diſpute.

"O infortunate people (ſayd hee) euen after ſo
"long goodneſſe with the ſurfet of the ſame vnfor-
"tunate, now are you inuited to a ſower Banquet;
"in which neither courtious entertainement allow-
"eth a welcome, nor holſome Diet ſatisfaction;
"vnleſſe odious Preſumption, arrogant Contempt,
"wilfull Negligence, vnexpected Oppreſſion, tyra-

nous

nous Slaughters, and vnnaturall Murders, be the
fare you attend, and the Dellicates you hope after;
For naught elſe affoordeth the Diſſhes of this
courſe, or the courſes of this Feaſt, conſidering
your glory (O yee that were proude in the fru-
ition of ſuch glory) is quite extinguiſhed; but in
whom? in *Olmus*; ô princely *Olmus* is ſlaine:
But where? in the Pallace temple ſacred to the
people, and ſanctified to the Gods: But how? by
force of Armes, and furie of Tyrants: But by
whom? by blood thirſty *Arnabazes*, who with
his owne hands chaſed vs from the place, and
ſlew his Fathers Sonne in the Temple; which as
I cannot declare without griefe, ſo I wiſh not let
paſſe without redreſſe, conſidering you impor-
tune to haue the gouernment worthy your obe-
dience; and not to remaine in a continuall feare of
your ruine: For what ſhall wee expect, when the
Common-wealth hath been made the Tennisball
of Fortune, and toſſed, as his violence inforced?
When the Complaints of the people haue been
derided, and irregular wilfulneſſe ſet on foote ma-
nie diueliſh ſtratagems? as for the Warres, which
hath made vs all ſmart, they haue been but counted
paſtimes, and the meanes to diſburthen him of ill
willers: But concerning our ſelues, How ſhall we
that be Strangers, liue without diſmay, when he
which was his Mothers Sonne, died without re-
morce? Let my very Enemies, whom yet I would
not haue enemies to their Country, looke about

" with the eyes of zeale and discretion, and then tell
" mee, if the Kingdome thus distracted, stand not in
" need of better direction, when they see in all strong
" compacted Estates, either Wise men be aduanced
" to authoritie, or men in authoritie endeauour to
" be Wise? Nor are we so slauishly bound to the
" succession of a Monarchy, not yet confirmed with
" eighty yeares memorie, to submit to priuat insati-
" atnesse, rather then prouide for publicke good.
" What shall I say? I protest, neither old rooted Ma-
" lice, nor any priuate Displeasure of my owne, gi-
" ueth this euidence: Or as the ill willer may in-
" ferre, perpetrateth a crime; but the dangers you
" remaine in (most honourable *Armenianus*) to see
" your Priuiledges taken from you, your Goods dis-
" pearsed, your selues made slaues, your Wiues ra-
" uished, your Daughters deflowred, and your Cit-
" ties set on fire, (as if your names were to be for-
" gotten on earth) compelleth this aggrauation:
" For the Head corrupted, suffreth the Body to pe-
" rish, and the Minde to be contagious: a Spring
" poysoned, dissolueth the venom into the running
" Streame; and the Prince lifted vp like the head of
" a politicall body, either of him selfe wicked, or
" of as wicked as him selfe mis-ledde, quickly ru-
" neth the flourishing'st Kingdome. Then may
" the Subiects well amisse, because they hate, and
" hate in that they can receiue no good: which
" seeing wee haue such pregnant proofe of, let vs in
" time, either alter this vntoward beginning, or

depose

depose our new beginning Tyrant: for in our
case, wee sorry not that good men doe die; but
tremble that the vicious doe liue.

No sooner had his rebellious eloquence soothed the conceites of the multitude, but with a mutinous hurliburly (not vnlike a raging Sea swelling ouer some small defence, which caryeth before it what so euer stoppeth his course; or a boysterous Winde, whose violence hurleth downe the greatest and highest Buildings) did they throngе on heapes against the place, whither safety had withdrawne *Artabazes*; and seeing the Ports guarded, were the more enraged, because resisted; yea altogether out of patience, as finding a likelihood of *Gesterius* interfiue, the most of them not knowing whither they went, nor aduised what to doe; yet because they would bee doing, did indeed what was not to be done: Some crying it surpasseth Homicide, and no way to be excused: others wished their silence, and inferred there might be a cauling circomstance: Some whispered the danger of delay, and that there was opportunitie to reuenge all their wronges; others gaue an assault, vainely presuming on the glory of the exployte: Some thought it too much outrage, and therfore seemed halfe angry; others of a more dangerous courage, fearing a slacknesse in the delusion, were the angrier at their anger: Some gaue a caueat to be aduised, least the King should preuaile;

others made vse of that doubt, that no Pardon would euer be graunted, and therefore as good purchase their Peace by force, or make it a generall trespasse.

Thus vnstayed haſtineſſe, the very principall part of trayterous insurrection, deuided their wits, and debarred all motions of allegeance, causing them, which intended to doe well, to practise what was amisse, and such as ment amisse to continue in tenn times worse: so that *Artabazes* was amased at the wretched vprore, and in a manner confounded to see such a concurrencie of mischiefe; but when he perceiued their outrage bent to entrap his life, and that they had begun a worke of great trouble, he summoned the best aduise he could of preuention, which concluded to winne time, the father of contraries, and by secret flight to preuent the present fury: reasoning thus, either their owne affayres would deuide them to their houses, or the charge in maintaining the Army would proue to comberſome, or the Queene hauing strongly fortified her selfe in *Belamia*, would raise and encrease her power, or the neighbour amity of *Media* would sufficiently reenforce his Army: this his eldest sonne *Artizeuus* much vrged, because *Artabanus* the *Median* King was many wayes tyed in honour vnto him, and to this did they all condiscend, making that night a sudden alarum and with a gallant sally quickly winning the Hauen with the Ships within, the

Riuer

Riuer, wherein no man resisting (for the King commaunding, and was now able to be obeied) they as quickely embarked themselues. *Artabazes leaueth Armenia.*

But heere you might haue deciphered the operation of base cowardise, and gallant vallure; this of such vertue, that each daunger was as soone ouerpassed, as attempted: that of such changes, that the hurlyburly amongst themselues slue more with disorder, then the Enemie with aduantage: For as *Anxitemus* gaue the on set, and that the king followed to second him, whole Lanes were made through some few companies new risen, and the suddennesse suffered none to rise, who were otherwise ouertaken: besides, the night encreased the feare, the feare a confusion, & a confusion a most lamentable slaughter, which the King not regarded (as supposing Iustice had taken his cause in hand) but thanking Fortune for the opportunitie, left them amazed at the accident, and setled him selfe to the dispatch of his iourney.

By this time some better aduised, then the rest, gathered togeather the dispearsed Forces: but when the light of their Vnderstanding had vnited it selfe to the light of the Morning, and that they saw so pitious a spectacle, and knew the King was escaped, then followed another alteration: For the vnsetled multitude were disputing on the first cause, condemned the present mischiefe, and began to enueigh against the inchantment of that exorcist *Gestarius*, which had so seduced them:

But

but when they ouerlooked their damages, and conceiued the matter, as if Iustice had sent them to the house of Correction, then grew the terror amongst themselues more, then their courages against their enemies, none now being enemies, but such as enterprised the defence of *Gestarius*, who base in very baseneſſe it selfe allowed each reproch without Coulour or excuſe, and suffered the wrecke of their rage with the losse of his owne life which done *Plinios* a chiefe man amongst them aduised to submit to the Queene *Euphamia*, whom in all actions they had found a worthy patterne of Princelyneſſe and vertue, and would not now degenerate, considering *Gestarius* had already receiued the guerdon of a Trayton, and no man remayned, but trembled to immagin, what the end would haue been, if the King had miscaried.

Gestarius death.

This euery one applauded; and a present submission made intercession for a pardon, but by reason of her feare of *Artabazes*, it receiued not full life, yet shee accorded, what euer chanted, to make their peace, and they encouraged with her Princely promise disperced themselues, whereupon she sent forth a Pinace, as a messenger of these glad tidings to finde out *Artabazes*, which made such haſt, that within three dayes it ouertooke them ouertaken with such ill succeſſe, as if mischiefe and destruction indeed had called a dismall counsell to crosse a man,

For

FOr (most Excellent Princes) euen when they thought misfortune weary of her tyrany, they descried a Fleet at Sea, the arch Pirat *Cleonidas*, whom the Ministers of report had certefied of *Artabazes* troubles, and mingling many lyes with some truth, perswaded, that most men desired his returne and aduancement, to which his former discontentments, and present meanes of Reuenge seemed to flatter him, that if the worst fell out, he might ioyne with *Olmus*, and so make the same Water that draue the Mill, to drowne the Mill by his comming, causing the Brothers so to weaken one another, that at last he might be warranted to depresse the strongest party: This aduised him to furnish his Nauy, and hearing the voyce of the Windes sound comfort vnto him, made vse of the time, & set forward with speed, vntill he encountred *Artabazes* Sailing into *Media*, and thought Fortune very liberall in bestowing such a benefit vpon him: For now the choise of reconciliation or Reuenge was exposed, but Reuenge sounded like Musicke in his cruell eares, as maintained with the life of a more cruell heart; wherupon without parlee, or other amplifieing manner of defiance (more then that he exclamed, how the fauour of the Gods had sent *Cleonidas* to cry quittance with the sonne of *Armenus*) he presently assaulted them. *The story of Cleonidas & Artabazes.*

But when the name of *Cleonides*, wicked *Cleonidas*-

nidas, (yea in his wickednesse dishonorable *Cleonidas*) was vnderstood of *Artabazes*, neuer came vallure to be so miserably checked (as if the sound of *Cleonidas* had proceeded from the Trumpet of death) for a sudden stilnesse (far be it from any man to call it a feare) made such a *Metamorphosis*, that when there seemed greatest need of an emboldding courage, then began a misdoubt of death warranting sorrow, which departed not, till a strong party of sighes and teares disproportioned his magnanimitie: at last he remembred himselfe, and seing his sonne *Anzitemus*, as it were ouerlooking him, caught hold of his Arme, and thus spake:

" O the strength of my life? O my *Anzitemus*?
" Be not dismayde at this extasie, nor impute the
" titell of Cowardise to the father of such a sonne,
" but the only opinion, & the now examination of the
" same, which I conceiued of the wise *Dermastro*,
" who long since in a greese-working sadnesse as-
" sured, that *Cleonidas* would be omninous vnto me
" hath ouerswaied that allacrytie, which I once sup-
" posed no mischance should distemper: yet I pro-
" test, this is not troublesome in regard of my selfe,
" but for thee, whom I haue doublie and irreco-
" uerably betrayed and abused: But necessitie made
a breach of his speeches: For *Anzitemus* (an-
swering no otherwise, then liue *Artabazes* in de-
spight of *Cleonidas*?) was enforced to the fight,
and so disposed his Ships, that *Cleonidas* deter-
mining to Grapple, thought to discouer some

aduan-

aduantage by Wheeling about, and turning his Sailes. And as when two mightie Rammes enraged with the ſmart of well inforced ſtroakes quickly part themſelues, and to the vnexperienced make a Cowardly retreat, but indeed to meete againe with ſorer fury: ſo acted *Cleonidas* his part, for what with animating of ſome, terrefieing of others, and his owne example he ſet forward againe, and becircled the ſhip, wherein *Artabazes* was with foure greater: Now who had ſeene the peereleſſe King for his worthyneſſe could not, but haue thought valure rightly beſtowed, ſuch was the ſlaughter he made, ſuch was the confuſion, which followed: The ſhipe full of dead Carkaſes, full of dying men, full of wounded fighters, himſelfe beſtowing no blow, but like a Meſſenger of Reuenge and ouerpreſſed with number like a Miniſter of rage, as for the reſt, the valiant in their deaths outfaced death, the coward ſaw his ſhame rewarded either with miſerable ſlaughter, or ſlauiſh Captiuitie: the Ships were funcke and diſmembred, and *Anzitemus* began to be ouermaſtred fighting with *Cleonidas*, which when *Artabazes* perceiued, his impatience was ſo great, that Terror it ſelfe might haue beene diſmayed at the diſtemprature: For a ſtrange fury began a ſtrange action ouerthrowing all reſiſters, making ſome Armeleſſe, ſome Headleſſe, ſome Liueleſſe & deſiſted not, till he approched the place where his ſonne fought, and diſplacing him be-

gan the Combate himselfe, which continued in such a fashion, that *Anzitemus* was deuided from them, though his handyworke had wrought the Miracles amongst the company: at last *Artabazes* (as angry, that it stood him in no more stead) threw away his sword, and closing with *Cleonidas* supposed with maine strength to throw him ouerboord.

Heere began a new contention, as if destruction ment to shew the beholders variety, but after many windinges, shouings, and turnings both strong, both cunning, the Pirat was ouerthrowne, but not with that quickneſſe, but *Artabazes* fell two, compelled by the fast holding one another: thus lay, they both breathing, both fainting, till *Cleonidas* awaking the very secrets of mischiefe, and perceiuing the neereneſſe of his owne Ship gaue directions to tumble them togeather therin, which whether they neglected thinke (Noble Princes) when it was as quickly done as spoken, and the Enemie to manhood commaunded to vngrapple, and so to depart with their gotten Prize, which though *Anzitemus* striued to intercept, yet Fortune vnwilling to his destruction infringed his desiers, and left him dying in seeing his father so captiued: and Tenn times dying in the succorleſſe helpe remaining; nothing with holding his owne entrance into the house of death, but hope of *Cleonidas* death, which very shortly he had time enough to meditate on, though slender meanes

Cleonidas carieth Artabazes away prisoner.

to

to execute: For when his eyes returned from their dastardly flight, as they termed it (because they might as well haue Triumphed ouer him) to regarde his present estate, and that he found of sixteene Saile & two Thousand men but two barckes, and fiftie eight in sartie, suppose he remained rather not knowing how to dye, then wishing to liue; at last the life breathing Counsell of *Ardmeio*, sayth-full *Ardmeio* recaled his spirits, and thus dispelled the combersome enemies of courage; Honorable *Anzetemus* leauing further ampliation of Titles, let deuine resolutions be rather reuerenced, then disputed on: let hũaine actions be rather accounted the subiects of change, then Anchor hold of perpetuitie; let vertue be still it selfe rather to redresse mischiefe, then maintaine prosperity; Let time haue her allowance, and what we suppose vnlikly, that will dispose vnlookt for: This I am bolder to inferre, because without doubt a secret influence doth none ouerrule, and might in some persones effect demissnesse, but in you, where the better part remaineth vnassaulted, which is magnanimity, let that apply and imploy it selfe to redresse, wherin no doubt as your constancie shall appeare, your succour shall approch: proceed therefore in your iorney to *Artabanus*? Whose ayde may set you forward into *Persia*, or whersoeuer *Cleanidas* is supported: or if you please you may returne into *Armenia*, where I am sure, if you will take the protection of the Kingdome into your hands, you shall

be able with loue and leasure to raise sufficient power to plucke *Artabazes* out of the iawes of destruction.

But *Anzitemus* vttetly neglected, yea in a manner despised the motion of returning, protesting better to returne, vnlesse *Artabazes* did returne; or both ouerturne their liues right to her contraries vsurpation, and therefore tooke the other course of going to *Artabanus*; where he was without scruple or diffidence entertained. But (most royall Princes) Misfortune followed like a shadow; for wee found the Noble king in such distresse as there seemed no hope of our recouery.

Montanus discouereth himselfe to be the Sonne of Artabazes.

Then belike (quoth the Duke) you were a party in this businesse? Great Duke, I was; and to bee plaine, am that vnfortunate *Anzitemus* the first borne of *Artabazes*, vnfortunate in being that I am; but ten times vnfortunate in not being at all.

Montanus hauing discouered himselfe to be King Artabazes Sonne by the name of Anzitemus maryeth Brizaca.

O Thou life of the World! thou glorious Sunne, (quoth *Ligorio* Prince of *Bactriana*) Who hath not heard of *Artabazes* misfortune? Who hath not heard of *Artabanus* successe? Who hath not heard of *Persias* troubles? Who hath not heard of *Anzitemus* victories? With that, hee arose to imbrace him: Nor were the rest of the Princes so vnsatisfied in opening his Discourse, as once to suppose there were errours in the same; but likewise arose, as if indeed the fame of his actions, and greatnesse of his birth,

had

had read them a lesson of respect and reuerence: Whereupon *Ligornio* tooke the King *Zalby* and the Duke aside, and gaue them notice, whom Fortune as malignant had thus turmoyled, whom Vertue as predominant had thus conserued, whom Fame as triumphant had thus eterniſed: which *Rugio* (hauing long since receiued the deuision of report) willingly acknowledged and therefore with true Honour welcommed him by the name of vertuous and victorious *Anzitemus*: then followed the King, then the rest: last of all, as the Iudges before led him to receiue the Prize from *Brizaca*, they now conducted him to be receiued Priseleſſe of *Brizaca*, alleaging that neuer deuine fauour could open the Treasure house of bountie vnto them, as now to behold the Pallace of *Fortuna* the place for truth and strangeneſſe to display the enſigne of admiration, for loue and beautie to March vnder the standard of vertue, for vallure and magnificence to flowriſh with the Coulours of Maieſty, for Riches and contentment to conduct the Vantgard of delight, and heere to appoynt the *RendeZuous*, as if they had concluded a Triumph of happineſſe; The Gods therefore forbid (quoth *Rugio*) that any default of mine ſhould intercept your deſires: loue him then *BriZaca*? Loue her then *Anzitemus*? and long may you liue to loue, and not liue, except you loue one another.

Great was the grace affoorded *Rugio* for this;

great

great was the ioy the Kings and Princes made for this, great was the amaze the Court shewed for this, great was the applause the people yeelded for this: but when the royall *Brizaca* leaned once a-gaine on her comfort, and that her happinesse extended in the highest degree of equality, shee thought it inequality in the highest degree not to glory in his loue, so firmely before incorporated, so fortunately now confirmed; therefore she willed a publicke solemnisation of a new contract: nor seemed the euer-willing *Trezebore* to repine at his Sisters choyce, but made vp the feeds of the consort with his plawditie. By this time, the household Officers couered for the Feast, and the Trumpets sound gaue warning of a new worke to the obseruations of good Customes adorned further conference, and with seuerall delights pol-lished the seuerall howers of that day; *Rugio* striuing to set foorth his owne greatnesse, and the Princes much pleased to receiue so full contentment: Yet the youthfull *Trezebore* and diuers others, to whom the report of strange aduentures seemed instigations to as strange performances in themselues, were vnsatisfied in the broken off Discourse of *Anzitemus* proceedings, vntill *Ligornio* to doe them a pleasure, and least *Anzitemus* should be too sparing, speaking of him selfe, (but especially to allow him opportunitie with the much desired *Brizaca*, to whom he might at leasure, yeeld account of his heretofore well imployed time) con-

Anzitemus and Brizaca maryed.

discended

discended the next day to finish his Story: which *Anxitemus* gratified as a kindnesse; and so left the Prince to pensell on the Table of his renowne.

Ligerio proceedeth in the History of Artabazes, & beginneth with the story of Artabanus and Astiages.

AFter the ciuill Warres of *Persia* (quoth the Prince) had made the Seruants of *Bellona* wearie in executing her bloody Commandements, a pacification was effected in the election of a man fitte for the gouernment (which at last, though *Astybanus* King of *Media*, a Prince of sufficient power, and more sufficient direction, was nominated) yet fell to the share of *Astiages*, by reason of his blood, education, and commutance amongst them. This *Artabanus* tooke in ill part, and was amongst the *Medians* to deputed contemptuous, nor wanted there such, which inferred, that the scorne was greater in the refusall after they had by their Embassadors vrged it, then if the matter had neuer been proposed. Of this sort; the especiall man was *Anxitemus*, who well hoped for the Crowne of *Media*, if *Artabanus* obtayned the other: whereupon an ambitious Counsell of Warre concluded reuenge; and confirmed the manner by inuasion. The rather because *Astiages* Duke in *Assyria* offered the disbursing of great summes of his owne, and tooke vpon him the conduct of the Army; which consisting of fourescore thousand foote, foure thousand Horse, and fourty

thousand Camels for burden, made him presume, that *Astiages* in the incheation of his Peace, was not able to raise sufficient forces to withstand him, considering his Souldiers hauing the prey and spoyle of a Country (worthy any title) exposed vnto them, seemed impatient at restraint; and indeed performed their duties in the best manner; "as which you see a costly Prize erected at the end of "a Course, and the runners striuing to make it the "Trophe of their victorie. For at their first entrance they began with subuerting of Houses, felling of Wood, fiering and cutting of Corne, dryuing of Cattle, ransoming of Wayes, and making of Forts. But *Astiages* vnwilling that the Earth should bee vnfurnisht of her golden Apparell, which already the vngentile multitude had presumed to disrobe; and forecasting, least the best part of his Country should be the Seate of the Warre, came forward in person, with a full and well furnisht Armie, compounded of all those Souldiers, which in the ciuill Warres were naturally caryed against one another; but now finding the sweetnesse of a little Peace, determine absolutely for the honour of *Persia*, and within seuen dayes made the tryall of Swordes to warrant their affection to their King and Country.

Thus both the Armies addressed to a mighty encounter, not vnlike to a dusty Path thauncing to and fro as obedient to the Winde, till an extraordinary violence whirleth the vppermost vnder,

that a man would wonder, how one blaſt ſhould so ſoone deuide ſo great an Heape; by which vn- friendly greeting, the one party hath great cauſe to lament; the other ſmall reaſon to triumph: The Earth bled for woe, conſidering the effuſion which was made, made her change colour, and receiue vnnaturall moyſture: The Beaſtes whoſe ſeruice conſiſted in the skilfull managing of the Rider, lay diſmembred, the men whoſe cunning was countermaunded by vnfortunate aduantage fell diſmounted: The Captiue ſuppoſing the law of Armes would haue ſerued his turne, is ſuddainely ſtab'd, the Triumpher is ouertaken with an others weapon in his owne bowels, ere the Blade is out of the others body: One-while the *Perſians* troope with applauſe of preuayling, anone the *Medians* ſhoute with ioy of victorie, as when you ſee a mightie preſſe of people, ſometime ſhouing forward with a murmuring noyſe into that corner, ſometime backward into this place, and many times confuſed with the cry of the company: To conclude, what Stratagem diſorder or outrage euer performed was now for the manner dangerous, and the number lamentable: For had not the night haſted to decide the quarrell, ſome other Company muſt haue ended it, conſidering it would ſoone haue ended them. Thus are the *Perſians* terryed with great damage, and the *Medians* entrenched with ſmall gaines; who ſlenderly mooued with this defeature, are not at all re-

moued from their first wilfulnes, but determine, that new supplyes shall make another tryall to pay their double losses: So haue I seene an vnskilfull Archer loosing one Arrow, to shoote another after to find it, till taking great paines in the search, he like a foole returneth with the losse of both: Whereupon *Adelphus* sent *Poligambus* into *Media*, who certified *Artabanus* of the vnfortunate disaster, extolling indeed aboue truth, the force of the Enemie, to deminish their owne shame in their ouerthrow; but this newes was not so ill of it selfe, as in the effect it procured. For *Medormus* taking aduantag of these particulars, that the losse in *Persia* would busie them heere with forren occasiones: that the supplying them would much troubted the kingdome: that the absence of the kings best friends gaue him oportunitie to strike the Iron, while it was hott; and that his owne abillytie seemed euery way strong enough for the attempt, made a strange, cruell, and Trayterous reuolt; wherein without doubt a prosperous beginning had been sustained with vnpropper successe, if by the ariuall of *Auxentius* the maske of despaire had not been taken off, and a new Countenance of hope smiled on the discomforted King, discomforted not so much in displeasure of his owne affaires, as in the despight of *Medormus* vnkindnesse, who had so kindly been beholding vnto him, as your selues may thus witnesse.

ARtabanus now raigning, was ſonne of *Artabanus Otanes*, who had the title of a father doubled in enioying alſo a Daughter called *Gliranda*, & his ioy redoubled in thoſe giftes of nature, beautie, and Maieſtie, which excelled in her, and the rather excelled, as yeelding to the gouernment of vertue and obedience: vntill ſome violent humour willingly lifting ope the Gate of ambytion made a ſtrange loue, the vnnaturall cauſe of a ſtrange hate. For ſomewhat pleaſed in the gallant youthfulneſſe, and well deſeruing towardlyneſſe of this *Medormus*, ſonne of *Ceſtus* brother to *Artabanus* the father, after many circumſtances and endeuors to purchaſe her liking, ſhe admitted rather with a gennerall curteſie, then any particuler affection, his diſcourſes and deſiers: but when his loue was pleaded with reſolution, that neither father nor brother ſhould be any obſtacle for her head to be impaled with the Crowne of *Media*, yrging his right indeed by being the elder brothers ſonne, a matter long ſince (as ſhee partly heard in queſtion, and determined otherwiſe) neuer was vertue ſo out of countenance: For admitting his reaſons and inducements, ſhe ranne Arme in Arme with him in the race of a violent Treaſon: yea ſuch an impreſſion had the expectation of her glory made, that in the infant time of her abortiue proceedings ſhe ſtomached leſſe reuerence, then what is accouſtomed to Queenes,

The ſtory of Medormus and Gliranda.

and was not ashamed to proclaime her now title, and defiance against her Father: nay more, after the discouery, and that they were preuented, she dared to exasperat the kings displeasure with a kinde of impudencie, who enraging to see such offenders past shame, commaunded the prerogatiue of Maiestie to proceed against them, wherby without question they had both lost their liues, as before they had done their loyalties, if her brother *Artabanus* now raigning had not importuned a hard returning mercy: yet could not the father so passe ouer the vnkindnesse: For he presently entertained all the Ministers of rage and discontentment, by whom he was quickly miscaried to the house of sicknesse, wherin only able to assure his sonne, that Kings permitte neither concurrent, nor Competitor, with a life fainting farewell, he bad him remember his father, and looke to himselfe.

Now encreased new troubles, because *Mediormus* and *Gliranda* set on worke new Treasons, as perceiuing one only obstacle to debarre their progresse to the dignitie, which made them contriue to remoue it, wherein they went somewhat cunningly to worke, causing a good mother to bring foorth a bad Childe, and vnder Colour of an Honorable exployte to incite *Artabanus* to the inuading of *Persia*, not doubting but he might miscary in the danger, or they by his absence haue conuenyency to reuolt: but when the kings

sending

sending *Adelphus* had thus disappointed them, the very despight discouered, that there is no confidence to be attributed to a reconsiled enemie, who like the Serpent of *Nilus* came fawning, creeping, yea and shed teares, till he was able to reach his prey, and then Murdred him without remorse, so so wrought with them from acknowledging a life saving benefit, that they once againe attempted a death working *Catastrophe*: a *Catastrophe* I may well terme it; as hauing a double reference both to the king, and themselues: For soothed, or rather betraied to this opportunitie of *Artabanes* forces ouerthrowne in *Persis*, they begann an intestine broyle and innouation in *Media*, which shewed the countenance of such miserable towardlynesse, that the king was enforced to fortefie himselfe in the Cittie of *Ataden*, where commonly his Court was kept, and the people were euer carryed with a Zeale toward him: neither did *Medormus* prosecute him, and within seauen dayes after *Anzitemus* ariuall (to whom for the strangnesse and crosse variety the King imparted both the one and the other Warre) miserably beseiged him.

When *Anzetemus* perceiued to what tryall his patience was enforced, he repined at the troubles, rather then was troubled with any repining, because his owne determination for *Artabazes* deliuery was procrastinated, and he himselfe must needes be engaged for *Artabanes* reliefe: yet

making

making vertue of neceſsitie, and willing to affright Conceit with ſome imployment, hee offred the king two eſpeciall iewels of his treaſurie, Direction, and Encouragement, that in regard of his louing Citizens, whom hee meant to protect: this in reſpect of his diſloyall Subiectes, againſt whom hee determined to proceed; whereupon a ſummons brought them to hearken, after a Parlee, and *Artabanus* out of the Window of a Port, thus deliuered his minde.

"I am gladd louings, and yet diſordred louing "Friends, that I ſpeake to ſuch, who by their quiet at- "tention make ſhew at the firſt, of wiſedome & obe- "dience; I will therefore without cauſion, or chal- "lenging this vnkinde and vnnaturall bearing of "Armes againſt your King, come to the purpoſe in- "deed: If then my defects and exiremities haue "been ſo narrowly ſearcht into, that I ſeeme vnwor- "thy to enioy my Inheritaunce, I was neuer ſo vn- "tractable to reiect good counſaile and aduiſe: or if "they haue been ſo vnnaturally vrged againſt mee, "that you cannot beare the burden without a re- "uolt; yet you might orderly haue diſcouered your "griefes, and deſired reformation: for I proteſt be- "fore the Reuenger of all Treaſons, that I ioyne "with you in well wiſhing to haue Goodneſſe flou- "riſh, Prudence direct, Fortitude protect, Iuſtice "controule, and Temperance moderate: Or if any "better courſe might like a quiet working Potion, "be adminiſtred for the health of this Politicall

body;

body, the patient is not so distempred to cast
away himselfe: But despitfull grudges haue led
you out of the smooth paths of reason to the rag-
ged and stony streightes of passion, returne for
shame, least your foolish choise scandalise you to
the world, or for feare, least you be driuen to an
vnrecuperable destruction: But if the ambition of
others hath detained you in the bondage of impos-
sible hopes and flatteries, shake off the deceite, and
with the eyes of discretion behold your owne
vocation, considering Iustice correcteth the of-
fender, as well as rewardeth the well deseruer.
Iuniper. Traitors, therefull to God and
you, especially to me, whom am his kinsman, disc-
gincer, abiect, cowardly, false hearted, your sub-
plotting, whom you take, suggest to despise your
king, disturbe the common wealth, slaughter young
friendes, Butchers of your kindred, ruine the
established Citie, and be a confusion of all.
Wisedome, Iuniper, giue not eare to the vniu-
uenum parcialitie, nor the world doom amisse you for
wittie sir, outrages but mis-rules, I heare some
good, some ill whispred amongst you, it is reason and
truth I haue discouered, and therefore there must
be error, nay monstrous rebellion in these proc-
eedings, deserue therefore your threatnings and
keepe your vallures in store against your enimies,
for heere are but allies, Countrymen, friends,
and kinsmen, vnlesse like Barbicides you detest
him who gripped the Bowels of his carefull Mo-
ther, I meane your Countrie, for whose Honour,

" if not for my sake; Be not stained with the loth-
" some spottes of infamy; And behold mercy, peace,
" and life offer themselues to your free election,
" take; and choose? the King speakes, the king pro-
" miseth, the King will performe; if not; let these
" be the times of terror, and the day of my aduance-
" ment neuer reckned in the yeere for this your stif-
" neckednesse; This was vttred so passionately,
" that the extremity burst forth into teares breeding
" remorse, yea the manner of his demeanor was such,
" that the impression had wrought their desiante a-
" gainst disobedience, had not *Medormus*, stubborne
" *Medormus* counterpleaded: they were entrapped
" with subtilty; and ensnared with a cunning baite,
" tush (sayth he) though *Artabanes* may make you
" beleeue, he will forgiue, yet can he neuer for-
" get this fault, and in the greatest plentie of your
" dayes will once for all make a seisure of your
" selues and inheritances; besides, your names and
" families shall be odious vnto him, alwayes sub-
" iect to iealousies, and neuer put in trust with mat-
" ters of import, as for aduancements they shall be
" so farre from being conferred vpon you, that
" like strangers you shall stand for ever remote;
" But why bread I this scruple amongst you? You
" haue Iustice on your side, and conscience bidds
" you assist me, that am wronged, as for *Artabanes*,
" he vsurpeth my right, and as the best of you can
" tell, so did his father deale with vnfortunate *Cæsus*
" his elder brother; goe on therfore; go on; I

say

say againe goe on, deuide the Kingdome at plea-
sure, and make your owne peace and prosperitie
to flourish. But for all this golden field of Pro-
mises, the third part of his Armie the next night
shrunke from him; and were doubly welcome to
Artabanus, both in the succour by the vniting his
owne Forces, and the benefite in making knowen
Medormus secrets: whereupon *Anzitemus* perswa-
ded to sally, reasoning on the dishonour for a Sub-
iect to encage so great a King in one silly Towne.

This was so forcible with *Artabanus* (who loo-
king on *Anzitemus* with the eyes of Iudgement,
wondred with what setled grauitie his Counsailes
were deliuered, as if maturenesse had brought him
from the wanton abroad of Youth to the house of
Wisedome,) that the men of Armes were that
night deuided into two parts: the one left with
the King, as a sufficient guard for the Citie: the
other committed to *Anzitemus*, as an able Armie
for the Field; with which by breake of day, hee sal-
lyed foorth, and resembled a beautifull Plant newly
come to some shew in a Garden, which euery looke-
er on praised, as an Ornament to the place, and fea-
red, least some misfortune might ruine before his
time: But *Medormus* made vse of his Souldiers re-
uolting, fortifying himselfe the stronger, doubling
his Watches, and in person ouer-looking his
Campe and Trenches, whereby hee was prepared
at all times; and so when the Alarum was giuen,
quickly made it an equall tryall: and although the

" valiant *Anzitemus* whirled in the thickeſt preſſe, weakning the troopes, abating the ſtrength of the " Enemie, reuerſing the diſpaire of the fainthearted, and proſecuting actions beyonde expectation, whereby his glory was both publiſhed, and ſtomaked; his friendes amaſed to behold magnanimity ſo well beſtowed, and his enemies confounded to finde the vallure of one man ſo ſufficient: yet were the *Medermians* ſo reſolute, and encouraged, that *Anzitemus* would not be further engaged, then his owne forces might purchaſe a freedome, & therfore made an honorable retreate, " as when you ſee the afterdrops of a ſtorme continue in the greateſt force at the parting. This he " accouſtomed many times beſides, as if deſtruction ment to play the wanton with the company, rather leſſning their number, then their hate; which ſo diſcouraged *Arsabanus*, perceiuing no other hope then the calamity of his Realme, and confuſion of the people, that he determined by ſingle combate to preuent theſe reuenge-crying maſſa- " cres, reſembling the Pellican, who by hazard of " her owne life, feedeth and preſerueth her young " ones.

NOw when *Anzitemus* perceiued ſo gallant reſolution, hee could not miſlike the ſame; yet checked his owne ſlackneſſe for not being author of the matter; and therefore to make as it were ſatisfaction to his opinion, hee

vrged

vrged *Artabanus* to elect him Champion of his cause, not so much in deed to confirme the King toward him, as to try *Medormus*; ouer whom hee was in a manner emulous: Againe, supposing in the preuayling an euerlasting league would be combined, or in the default, his troubles should end with his owne end: Heere grew a vertuous Contention betweene *Artabanus* and *Anzitemus*, the one inferring the vnreasonablenesse of the cause to bring a man of his deseruing into so great danger for an others businesse: the other, insisting on his desire to match the Aduersary vpon equall tearmes: at last, *Anzitemus* preuayled, and a Herrold for the King proclaymed the Defiaunce; which *Medormus* durst not but accept, because the Company ouerboldly vrged him, that a Prince in possession was willing to aduenture both life and dignitie; and they themselues were almost tyred with butchering one another. But when *Glirauda* euer doting on his strength, and cunning in matters of Armes, alleadged the likelihood of successe, hee neuer disputed, but appoynted time, place, and manner; which was by prime of day at a fourtnights end, a full mile from the Cittie, and like a Knight on Horse-backe with Launce, Sword, and Shield: And although in the meane space, some quiet spirits laboured betweene the parties, wishing *Artabanus* pacified toward his Sister and *Medormus*; and vrged *Medormus* to submit to the King, whom Vertue would questi-

Artabanus offereth priuat Combate to Medormus which Anzitemus performeth for the king.

onlesse bring to the house of Pardon; yet hee misconstruing the Moderation of Peace-makers, was wilfully bent to put all to this tryall.

Thus is the day come, and the dignity of the King compelled some magnificent Shew for the furnishing of *Anzitemus*. First, diuers Pursevants at Armes gane notice of *Artabanus* approch, and a L. Marshall with a hundred Seruants all well appoynted, so deuided the disordered multitude, that the way seemed a liuing Wall, as if the men had admitted direction by line and leuell: then followed two hundred Courtyers on horseback richly apparelled for their owne credits, and the Kings Honour: Next matched owne hundred Gent. on foote all in a Liuerie futable, which was a Roabe; *Morisco* fashion almost to the small of the Legge of flame coulor Veluet, yet so darkned with black-silke and gold-lace, that you might easily imagine, there was sorrow mingled with his glory, they had Sea caps embrodred sorting to his *Impreso*, semiters according, and halfe buskins of white Spanish Leather enclosed on the outside with flame coulor Ribbin: Then followed twenty spare Horse, on whom rode so many Pages bearing seuerall sheilds with his deuice, which was a ship in full Saile betwixt *Scilla* and *Caribdis*, the Mott, *As ill is to come*, giuing notice his troubles were not ended, though he should atcheeue this aduenture: after them rod fiue Knights with his caske, Launce, Sword, Shield and Horse, which

was

was trapped in a sumptuous and curiouse caparison of Cloth of gold, wrought like flames of fier couered ouer with rowles made like waues of Sea water greene Cipers, in such an artificiall loosnesse mingled with the stuffe, that you would haue supposed the water to haue quenched the fier, and the fier to haue burned the water, besides they were hooked togeather with great Clasps of Goldsmiths worke ritchly Enameled, but more ritchly beautified with Diamonds and Rubies. Presently followed a new fashion Chariot made like a Rocke irremoueably standing for all the waues seemed impetuous against it, which by reason of the motion of the Wheeles tossing water against it indeed, like the violence of a Mill, resembled a tempestuous Sea: Vnder it, or rather within it satte *Anzitemus* and *Artabanus*, who in a pleased gratitie and yet displeased Countenance gaue the people to vnderstand, his care was not so much for his owne glory, as their safty: The Rocke was tyed to certaine Cables made of blacke Silke and Gold, which had their seuerall fastning to sixe Pinnaces, so well deuised, that the Horses enclosed within them gaue action full libertie, and they Sailed with the Rocke away, as if they determined to draw it out of the Sea: but the faster they went, the sorer did the Billowes threaten by beating on the sides, yet stood the Rocke stronglyfounded, assuering that vertue and magnanimitie remaineth integrate, what aduerce crosses so

euer

euer chaunce: Round about were fifty Gent. on foote, the younger sonnes of Noble men with Pollaxes in their hands, whose neerenesse to the king gaue notice of their Honorable place, and credite. After followed the Officers of his Court, Guard, & Attendance; and last of all, fiue thousand armed Souldiers brought vp the Rhare, who well marshalled with their Commaunders and Officers, was not the least grace to the Triumph.

Thus *Artabanus* came with *Anzitemus*, and *Anzitemus* with *Artabanus* into the lists, mouing his very Enemies with the manner of his caryage, and the state of his spectacle: and although his behauiour neither enclined to exceeding chearefulnesse: nor disconsolate sadnesse, whereby they might haue vsed correspondence in either; yet began they to wonder with a kind of repentance, how they had been all this while subiect to such preuarication: but the approch of *Medemus* extinguished these meditations, who serued by the Earle *Marshall*, that *Anzitemus* was already in the Feeld, thus issued out of a Crimsen Veluet tent, all imbrodred with Crossebowes of Gold with this Mott: *Viribus plusquam ingenio*.

First a Fame on Horseback diuulging her hate to secrecy sounded a very Warlike diuision: next followed diuers gallantly mounted with the seuerall *Penons* of all his Troops: then came fifty Gent. on foote all apparrelled alike in an vpper Robe of *Arabia*; the stuffe Crimsen Veluet, the fashion

open

open before, cut vp behind, and of each side: all places yet enclosed by reason great Gold-lace Buttons made of intricate knottes, were folded within the circuit of the like Loopes: On their head the attyre now vsed in *Turkestan*, but long since in *Syria*, made of Crimson & yellow Cipers rowled company togeather, and thicke beset with Spangles: behinde almost to the Calfe of the leg hung a Scarfe fastned to the rowles of Crimson Taffata, all over embrodred with Crowries: By their right side a short Sword, guilt in the like coulored Sherh, as if they had been all lefs-handed, and signified that what enheritance could not challenge, by one meanes or other he would obtaine: their Stockinges were of Yellow farnitt, and Shooes of red Leather, as if they purposed for their Maisters sake to wade in Bloud. Their rode fortie Knightes his Allies and confederates, Armed in guilt Armour pounced with a Garden of Marigoldes, and a heauen ouerspredding with a glorious Sunne in it, as if he were the Sunne of their glory, whom like the Marygold they would obserue, for he had giuen them already Guilt maces in their hands, resembling Sceptres, with intent to inuest them kings: After followed ten Pages on fourny spare Horses richly caparisond with seuerall deuises, but their shields had one *Impreze*, which was an Arrow flying out of a Bow to the Element: The Mott higher then another: next attended three Knightes with his Helmett,

Shield, & Launce: Then came he himselfe proudly mounted, his Armour sumptuously enameled with certaine Crosse-bowes, which were no way to be bent but by force, but to see them of Goldsmiths worke richly embellished with Rubies and Opalles, orderly marshalled all ouer a Crimson-veluet Caparison; you would sure haue taken him for the Sonne of *Mars*, or Seruant of *Honor*: On his left Arme hee ware a Scarfe of Orenge curled Cipers all ouer tufted with Womans haire, made fast vnder buttons of Gold, quadrated with rich Diamonds. This *Clirunda* bestowed vpon him, as allwring thee would spare neither Hayre, nor Heart, to forward the enterprise. Last of all followed diuers companies of his Armie, not in mistrust of any vnlooke-for surprysing, but to giue the King notice, their obedience vnto him was not altogeather forced.

Thus is the comicall Shew presented, and many sportiue obseruations streamed about in a smoth channell: But now enters Death and Destruction to bring in a Tragedie, and the Princes summoned to doe their deuoire, with a gallant speedinesse make a stop in the midst of the race; so that what with fulnesse of their Strength, the swiftnesse of their Horses, the sureneſse of their Armour, the cunning in their Deuision, and their iust Meeting togeather: the Launces were weary of their length, and the Knights might for neereuesse imbrace one another: But this was soone forgot-

ten

ten, and their vnsheathed Swordes put them in minde, they were drawne to some purpose: so began a gallant Turny, which likewise had his passage, till *Medormus* quietly gathering vp the raines of his Horse with his bridle hand set him againe loosely forward, and indeed was the first, which stroke a blow of aduantage; wherein if hee had not ouer-liberally yeelded to his haste, it had made an excellent tryall of the deliuery, whereas it now slided by without any feeled damage. But when *Anzitemus* felt him selfe burdened with smart and shame, hee reprehended his slacknesse, and set a taske on his courage to requite it, which by this time, made anger follow apace; yet loth to strike him behinde, and vnable to wheele about, with a reuerse he hit him on the side of his head, so comming fortunately forward, stroke him againe, as if hee meant to tell him, there was two for one. Quite was *Medormus* out of patience, and so put an action of distemperature in practise, by bearing his Shield ouer his Sword with a maine carreere at his aduersarie, who apprehending the mischiefe, fortunately receiued it on the outside of his, which vnable to resist the force, vnwillingly deuided it selfe, and *Anzitemus* was glad he escaped so, supposing a slender losse sooner recouered, then a greater, which made him imploy both his wariness and diligence the better, that hee desisted not, till *Medormus* best defence was broken, disioynted, and vnable to stand him longer in stead; who-

by this meanes without a shield, was somewhat amazed at his Adversarie; yet scorning to give any such notice, hee raysed vp himselfe finding his Horse much distempred, and acquainted with the property of the distemprature, made a wonderfull close, not idle from imploying his Sword to the best purpose, insomuch you would have sworne the Beast had bin taught to fight: For with byting, flinging, striking, shouldring, in despight of resistance, hee bare *Anzitemus* Horse and Man to the ground; wherein hee had made his Master great, yea ouer-great recompence, if *Medormus* presuming to defeat him further, had not ouerhastely followed, and by some misfortune accompanied him in the disgrace which *Anzitemus* tooke in good part, and with a new chearefulnesse auoyded his cumbersome burden: Though Mischance made him first fall, yet as good chance helped him first to rise; whereby it appeared, that he had a Sword and hilfe a Shield, against a Sword alone: yet was this Sword so well handled, that neither *Anzitemus* Armour, nor other additions to his courage, could preuent a forcible entrance into many parts of his Body, whereby the smart, and losse of blood, begged releefe at his hands, and in a manner challenged him of vnkindnesse, that would suffer such a disgrace. This turned anger into furie, and the Prince aduancing himselfe, prossed neerer and neerer, vnlaced the broken Strappes and Tyings, and made a checkquer par-

tition

trion of his Taces and Cuirats. Thus continued the Fight with generall amaze of the beholders, and reciprocall damage to them selues: and had not *Anzitemus* shewed some prerogatiue in being better Breathed, as hee was better Armed, *Medormus* might haue equalled him both for strength and courage. For when hee perceiued that the detracting of time, would be disaduantagious to him, with a strange sodainesse hee helped his Sword with the strength of both his armes, and stroke at *Anzitemus* head, and doubling the blow, made the Helmet giue way to a wrong seisure, whereby (but that the fortune of flying asunder slipped the force on the Gorget) the same hand had reached the Crowne of *Media*; yet diuine reuolutions determined otherwise, so that *Anzitemus* recouering ayre, summoned all the friendes of valure, and making a strong party, with a violent thrust ran him through by the left Groyne. Thus had Death an vnkinde entrance, and hee (if there had been hope to the contrary) a willing vnwilling victory. *Medormus Slaine.*

But no sooner held Iustice vp by this meanes, her Iustest Ballances with an impartiall Arme, but an vnfained remorce constrained the company to cry, the Gods preserue *Anzitemus*, the Gods saue *Artabanus*: who now hasted to the protector of his life and dignitie, with an obsequious ceremony, had not the other disclaimed it, vrging only the pardon of *Gliranda*, which shee with a scorne re-

iected, for assured of her husbands death, bad death goe forward: and entertaine her for a slaue, that would not be the friend of life: so stabing her selfe, left an instace of Trayterous ambition worthylie rewarded.

Gliranda killeth her selfe.

Anzitemus meditateth on his owne affayres and his fathers imprisonment.

THis was for the manner & the parties querimoniall, but soone ouerpassed, in regard *Anzitemus* feeling his wounds begin to coole inforced their best care toward him, and so by the skilfull & fortunate Surgeon receiued presently some ease, & that hasted them to the Cittie, where the applause of the people, his welcome, and Triumph was so magnificent, that he seemed vnpained in his paine, & acknowledged sufficient satisfaction, though his debt to nature had been payed in the bargaine: But by that time the woundes of his body began to heale the corasiues of his minde craued some cataplasme, as his owne businesse, *Armenias* troubles, and *Artabazes* captiuitie: all which, like the humble sutors for a friend in distresse, pleading to a King his merit, and how well bestowed his fauour should be toward him, vrged *Anzitemus* to goe the next way: whereupon hee counsayled *Artabanus* to recall his Forces out of *Persia*; reasoning, that a vertuous Peace, was to be preferred before an vniust Warre; and concluding to offer *Astiages* a present of euerlasting Amitie, by matching *Roxana* his Daughter to *Darius*,

Artabanus

Artabanus Sonne. Neuer was Counsell better bestowed; for though *Anaxemus* thought by this contract, to reduce his confused businesse to some forme, and so to be able to circumuent *Cleonidas*, where soeuer hee lurked; or at least to redeeme his Father: yet they apprehended it, as the voyce of some good Angell for their happinesse, and without more adoe, elected the Honourable *Mulcasser* to the Embasie; by whose Commission, *Adelphus Artabanus* Lieuetenant generall in *Persia*, was against his will discharged, because in deed the Souldiers were disappoynted in their expectation, as euer louing better Booty and Spoyle, then Pay, or strict Obedience to home Commanders. But certified of *Medormus* treasons, and how honourably *Anaxemus* had behaued himselfe, they quickly returned to the sweet walkes of loue and duetie, and allowed *Mulcasses* authority: So *Adelphus* leasurely gathered vp his Army, and yet departed not quite out of *Persia*, till hee vnderstood *Astiages* answere; who keeping his Court at *Susiana*, (whither hee had withdrawne his Forces to garison) entertained *Mulcasses* as a Messenger of peace; and after audience, limitted a time to receiue his satisfaction.

But after he was fully dismissed, the monstrous enemies of Prosperitie, Enuie and Wrath made an ouset against the Kings honour, and so battered the citadell of good thoughts, that hee could not depresse his malice without discouering it thus to

his

" his Councell.

" My Lords: I am sure, you will not be so sparing
" in your regard toward the renowne of *Persia*, and
" my Honour: but you remember the disgraces of-
" fred my fathers house by the first *Artabanus*,
" who many yeeres turmoyled with a Cruell warre
" our Country, and denied our right to this King-
" dome: and now you see *Artabanus* his Sonne, as
" his Father against the Law of nature would have
" disappointed vs, against the Law of nations, hath
" intruded himselfe, my auncestors cast cleane out
" of doores by a mutinous rebellion, and I not per-
" mitted the safetie of my hard gotten peace: but you
" see Iustice hath taken my part a little, and Fortune
" openeth now the doores of a further recompence,
" I meane the Crowne of *Media* it selfe, but how?
" not by base relaxation and accordance, so that
" wills, but by our owne valures, and prevailing ex-
" cursions, pressing now forward, as if a Tree cut
" to the heart and hanging by a small hold were
" with a strong push to ridd the workman of more
" labour: Let vs therefore (sooth) this opportunitie,
" and catch the Goddes by her goodly forelocke, least
" she take in scorne the disdaine, and we preposte-
" rously repent the negligence. But the most of his
" Councell interposed their negatives, and forecast-
" ing the benefits of a flourishing Common wealth
" through sweete peace, decyphered the mischiefes,
" yea the miseries of the best warre. Then Mithrobu-
" zanes replyed, the Honor of a King was not to be

said Million

Million of liues, and the Gods had appointed them
their vicegerents, sometime like good stewards to
husband their plenty & encrease their inheritance,
sometimes like seuere Maisters to correct offen-
ders and to be the scourges of Iuorath: howsoeuer,
he would not remaine ouerinsolted by the wrong
of an other, but be famous in after ages for some
exployte of his owne: They againe inferred that
contentions arose from prestigious spirits which
delighted in the blood of men, that their late scares
of desolation and adulterie were not yet worne
out, that plentie like an Orphan went mourning
in the streetes, and that his election to the Diadem
challenged no such bondage at their hands, be-
cause they well hoped in his conformity to good
purpose, and had ioyned with *Artabanus* in the
promise of the Kingdome; but this put him be-
yond all patience, as euer stomaking the house of
Media, and watching an opportunitie to be re-
uenged, though in deed the first errour proceeded
from the incontinencie and tyranny of *Persia* vpon
this occasion.

The story of Ormisdates and Damasfloris.

Ormisdates not long since King of *Persia*, having matched with *Garifeola*, *Artaba-nus* Mother of *Media* matched her likewise with Nobleness of birth and minde, and by reason of their loues, the Kingdome like a well manured Ground, brought foorth en-

creaſe of much happineſſe, to the inestimable entiching of the poſſeſſors: For although the Queene was barren of her body, yet her inward excellencies ſo flouriſhed, that they added life to good conceite toward her; and indeed moderated to the admiration of divers, and the honor of the King, that wanton libertie, which ſuch a Prince in enioying many concubines, preſumeth on. But the oldeſt Wood doth ſooneſt burne, and *Ormiſdates* in his declining age was ſooneſt allured to luſt-breaking faith, and did degenerate from himſelfe, I meane ſtood not ſo ſtrongly on his Guard of vertue, when there was expectation of fetled humours, as in the heate of youth when the errors of life might haue paſſed with excuſe: For as he paſſed through the ſtreetes of *Magranopolis* to cellebrate the feaſt of the Sunne, he caſt his eyes vpon a window, wherein a Lady (ſodeſt her outward ſhew bare the ſame record) ſate with a countenance compounded of cheerefull affability, and louely modeſty, little thinking, that cunning had taught her eyes both to allure, and draw compaſſion, that experience had brought her countenance to the vſe of many changes, that neceſſitie had made her tongue deny, where ſhe wiſhed, and demaund, where ſhe knew there was nodenial: that time had wrought her heart ſometime like waxe to melt with the warmth of deſier, ſometime like ſtone to be hardned with diſdaine: ſo that courſome had cultruſted her demeanor Matronlike, if there

were

were occasions of sobrietie: Courtlike, if great estates importuned, and fantastique, if there were inducements of wanconnesse.

This was *Damastoris*, a woman of reasonable good Parentage, of reasonable good yeares, of reasonable good estate, a Widdow childles, and wealthy, two helpes in all conditions and Common-wealths; and a wanton taking the benefite of her time: and belike finding inconvenience in the obedience of one man, would not so subiect her youth and liberty any more; whereupon shee made vse of her experience, and indeed ouerliberally satisfied her pleasure: Yet with that delicate conueyance, that the fault seldome appeared, and if it did, could not be vrged against her. With her *Ormisdates* fell in loue, or at least in such liking, that hee perswaded himselfe it was loue; and so determined to perswade her: this yet was the doubt, the meanes of accesse, hee not able to come to her without speciall notice taken, and for speciall purpose; shee not likely to come to him, neither willing to attende in Court, nor hauing cause of Petition or complaint. At last Desire bred Imagination, Imagination Conceit, Conceit some Disquiet, and Disquiet must needes haue Redresse. Now when Princes come to seeke Redresse, I hope no man will imagine, that any worldly meanes can be wanting; and when the King of *Persia* importuned dispatch, who would not? nay, who did not endeuour to please and to pleasure him? yet herein

hee onely imployed *Pasquito*, a man of reasonable comelineſſe, exceeding good behauiour, dellicate ellocution, ſetled experience, (as hauing all his time like a cunning Marchant, ſeene many Countries, and neuer daring to venture his Wealth in one Shippe) and honourable ſecrecie, ſuch a qualitie that ſomtimes all other good partes faylinge it ſimplie preuayleth: who at the firſt, pleaded many excuſes to the King, of diſgrace in the action, haſſard of preuayling, & ſo incurring his diſpleaſure, danger of temptation, ieloſies, miſtruſtes, and the cunning of Women: At laſt the king commaunding, or he being willing to obey, *Pasquito* furniſhed him ſelfe, and came to *Damaſcris* with all the graces of a Princes ſolicitor; firſt beginning with her owne worth, that ſhee did Beautie wrong, to keepe it like a Flower in a cloſe Potte, making no vſe either to pleaſe the ſcent, or the ſight: that ſhee was a preſent for a mighty King (and peraduenture a King indeed did like her.) This hee ſayd, to make her inquiſitiue, knowing Women were ſubiect to curioſitie) that he had heard and knew ſhee was Wiſe, and therefore would not refuſe the fortune was toward her; and that hee came from *Ormiſdates*, who wiſhed well vnto her, and had ſent a Preſent of kindneſſe by him; ſo that if hee were not an vnworthy Meſſenger, and a man hatefull, it could not chooſe, but ſhee muſt apprehend the bleſsing ment. This was vttered in ſo good a faſhion, that though ſhee had knowne, how to haue reproued Incontinencie, yet could ſhee not,

much

much mislike him, that did but his dutie to his Prince; nor the King, that offered fauour to his subiect; nor her selfe, for being solicited by the mighty *Ormisdates*: But with a kind of abashed drawing backe, rather studying to continue her businesse to the best purpose, then willing to entertaine any cause of mistake, shee yet made him beleeue, there was cause of mistake, saying, (and almost weeping in so saying) that the King wronged her much, to suppose shee would make sale of her Chastity: that hee wronged her more so to motion her dishonour, hauing neither seene nor heard any tokens by her of immodesty. All this, sayd *Pasquite*, is confessed: yet, quoth hee, the loue of a King is of that prerogatiue, that hee protested, it was more for her owne sake, then the Kings satisfaction hee came thither; and so by degrees of insinuation, fell to appealing her; from appealing to perswading, from perswading to counsayling, that howsoeuer she determined (which sayth he, I will not vrge further against your vertuous resolutio,) it were not amisse to speake with the King. Heere shee stopped againe, falling to the examination of particulars, how, when, and where, the King should take notice of her? All which, he certified with excellent circumstances. Then she made many doubts of the Queenes iealousie, the Courts opinion, and her owne iourney. Nay, sayth hee, if you vouchsafe me the Author of this good Newes to my Prince, neither Queene, Court, nor your

selfe, shall know your selfe, or once haue cause to entertaine the attributes of Ielosie. Thus it was concluded, that shee should bee disguised like a Marchant of *Arabia*, and so vnder colour of the sale of rich Iewels haue secret conference with *Ormisdates*, and this she did with that gallant demeanor and attractiue, that the King was rather rauished then coulmored toward her, yea she behaued herselfe so well, that at a second meeting he promised to intest her a Dutches, and if he had issue by her to proclaime him heire to his kingdome, which was performed accordingly. For with in one yeere after, she brought him a sonne named *Ascrasapes*, and he thought himselfe a happy man to be the Father of a Child: This made him dote on her the more, and that made her deale with him the cunninger: so that the Queene *Gansecola* seemed altogeather forgotten, and her former deserving was ouergrowne with the rancke weedes of a Strumpets flatterie, which shee could not but repine at: yet at the first, shee gently behaued her selfe, till finding the nature of some things, as Nettles and Burres to sting the softer by the softer handling, shee remembred her great birth, and plainly told him the wrongs done to her and her house were intollerable; and that shee would be reuenged both on the tother and the Bastard: this incensed the king, and mingled with the Counterfeate feare of *Damasseris* contriued a strange course, which was by deuorce (vnder co-

lour

loth of his cruelnesse) to be seperated from her, nor desisted hereof. But as a man tumbling downe a paire of Staires neuer linsalling till he came to the bottome; did he cause the same resemblance in the Queene, absolutely putting her by all gouernment, and proclaiming *Despotes* in her stead. But when *Artabanus Otanes* her Sonne vnderstood of these proceedings, the indignitie was too hainous to tollerate, and the reuenge too difficult to attempt: yet something must be done to keepe his Honour inuiolate, and his Mother from so strange infamie; whereupon without further ambagie, finding himselfe vncapable of the Scepter, by reason that the Lawes of *Persia* abhorred a Stranger (which yet they afterward were about to disanull) and vnable to make a conquest in regard of home incumbrances, hee determined to cast it on some other, whose valour and abilitie might second the enterprise. To this counsaile was *Tamasis* called, a Noble man of *Persia* of the honourable family of *Otanes*, and next heire to the Crowne; to him did *Artabanus* inferre the scandall of the Kingdome, the wicked life of *Orontates* inuading them all, the bastardy of *Artaxares*, an vnlawfull stop to hinder his course, the desire of the people to haue reformation, (who most commonly vnder that goodly shew, begin mutation,) and his owne power to assist him; touching sparingly his Mothers wronges, as if hee would leaue out somewhat for him to remember, and so might be sure

of

of his apprehention, which comforted to his wish. For *Tautaxes* ambitious enough of himselfe was willing to be thought worthy to be a Prince, not remembring the danger of that point, but now incited by such likelyhoodes, he gathered his forces and friendes together, sending *Artabanus* word, that if he would come in person (because he would haue the name of a King and credite to the action) there should not any care want to be the Boate to what streame he liked.

Thus began the ciuell Warres of *Persia*, and this stone neuer left rowling, till *Ormisdates* house was cleane extinguished, and the Crowne at last wanted to *Media*, yet many battailes were fiercely fought, and the seuerall alterations gaue only notice, that this world is a stage of vncertainties. For as *Antabanus* once brought the King to narrow streight, and *Tautaxes* if he had followed his Fortune might haue ended the Warre, *Ormisdates* thus despighted in the worst manner made the wronged *Garisela* beare the burden of his rage, and striking off her head sent it her sonne as a present. I will not say he lamented remedilesse hatred, but he prosecuted his reuenge and went forward apace, had not his owne misfortunes in despight of resolution recalled him, and this was the first reuolt of *Medermus* and *Glinanda* in *Media*, whereby *Tautaxes* proceeded as well now to lincas to reigne. For there is no *Medium* betweene an *Emperor* and Traytor, and in a gallant encounter he with the misled

Ormisdates, and returned in triumph toward *Magranopolis*, where the incontinent *Damasloris* kept her Court, of purpose to shew the greatnesse of her state in that place, where once shee had lived in meane degree: But as hee was marching, a Brother of the Queenes vnder colour of Embasie from *Artabanus*, and craving priuat conference, stabd him to the heart with a poysoned Knife.

Now was *Damasloris* sole Queene, and with her cunning and authoritie, handled her businesse so well, that by aduancing of some, bestowing of Offices on others, placing reconsiled Friends (least farre off they might prooue dangerous Enemies) neerest her seate, and forbearing a time the vsuall impositions of the Kingdome, her former errour was forgotten, and they were contented to admit of her Sonne *Asteasapes* for King; who by this time was able to conceiue of matters of gouernment: and seeing the miseries which the Warres had in a manner deuasted all the Kingdome with, politickly matched with *Nestra* the Daughter of *Tanaxes* slaine by his Vnckle, hoping by vniting both the Families togeather, to leaue no scruple nor doubt for his succession. In his time many troubles were appeased; but what he purposed the strength of his state, was his owne ouerthrow, like a man determining to spit poyson out of his mouth, but doing it against the winde, it flyeth backe againe in his face, and inuenome:h

as ill: Which came to passe by having a Sonne this *Astiages* now reigning, whom his Mother *Mitrea* brought vp very carefully, as looking on him with reuengefull and ambitious eyes to maintaine her owne greatnesse, and by his meanes to bring to good end, what shee had long since deuised. First then, the remembrance of her Father helped forward her hate against *Damastoris*; and that ended not without effects, and they procured *Astrasapes* to depose her from her regencie, by suggesting a conference happening betweene the Mother and Sonne, wherein shee dared to tell him, hee must respect her as principall cause of his Honour, and that hee was tyed in a kind of duty toward her, for aduancing him in this sort. Little needed the Spurre to a forward Horse; little needed *Mitrea* to vrge this against her, because hee tooke it in ill part, and the Sonne of such a woman had malice enough in store; which according to the Queenes owne desire, made his will stand for a Law against both his Mother and her partakers. The second attempt was against the King himselfe; for finding her heart to stomacke shee was matched with a Bastard, for whose sake her Father was slaine; and her selfe more in pollecie, then honour and loue thus confirmed, shee cared not what troubles were procured, or mischiefe might settle her minde; so that after many circumstances, *Astrasapes* died, not without suspition of poyson, and shee in her [illegible] flourish was

sole

sole Queene of the *East*. But the Noble men of *Persia* casting vp the account of these strange distractions of the Common-wealth, thought by making away the cause to remoone the effects; and by quite abolishing the race of *Ormisdates*, (especially the ofspring of *Damaſtoris*) and somewhat fearing the violent humour of the Queene *Mitrea*, determine for another King, and looking toward *Artabanus* of *Medea*, as well for his owne worth, as his Grandmothers sake, and Fathers losse; who though he perished not in the Fieldes of *Persia*, yet by his being heere, his troubles in *Media* were occasioned, nominated him to the place, and sent accordingly to bid him prouide for all their goods. Yet by the good behauiour of *Mitrea*, was this iudgement reuersed, and *Astiages* her Sonne appearing with some towardlinesse, made them repeale the former Edict, as it were pitying his youth, and that hee deserued no such punishment; but indeed the desire of satisfaction toward the noble house of *Tauages* bound in their duty and obedience with stricter obseruation: So they all submitted to *Astiages*, and misfortune-weary of tarrying long in *Persia*, passed into *Media*, as your haue heard: in which time the Kingdome of *Astiages* recouered some part of her former glory, vntill *Artabanus* tooke vpon him the burden of being wronged, and so lay in waite for reuenge; which hee went about, but was frustrated by his forces defeature vnder the leading of

Adelphus and so shot another shaft of all peace working goodnesse, by the sending of *Mulcasses*: but how he sped the Prince, *Sacromirus* heere can best tell: For as I suppoose the beautie of *Roxana* daughter to *Astiages* had then drawne him into *Persia*: Indeed said *Sacromirus*: indeed sayd the *Duke*; by your Princely leaues we will be sparing of this delight, For pleasure vsed with extremytie looseth her sweetnesse, and best propertie: therfore let vs first dine and remember the Ladyes, as well lone exercise, as discourses; and yet the hearing of other mens matters doth little touch their owne prayses: so that day passed with the varietie of Courtly pastimes, and the next with the flying of Hawkes, the third with hunting, and the fourth made the time seeme very long, had not the company entreated *Sacromirus* to finish *Artemus* story: who thus began.

Sacromirus some of Hircania proceedeth with Artabanus historie.

AFter *Astiages* was in in a manner restrained by the wisdome of his Councell: he yet most ingenerously scorned to be so courbed of his will, and enraged, put in execution a terrible reuenge, imprisoning *Mulcasses* against the Law of Armes, and surprising *Adelphus* against the Law of honestie: within the time of truce gathering his Armie together, and one night came vpon him vnprouided, he yet vsed the aduantage of his Trenches, and some streight passages he had fortu-

fortunately *Barricaded*: But alasse this rather sharpned, then rebated their courage; So by reason of ouernumber and home assisted, they quickly made a breach into the Campe, and Triumphed with a notable slaughter: *Adelphus* dangerously wounded, and hardly escaping to be the messenger of more harder tidinges.

When *Artabanus* saw him selfe thus subiect to the mallice of fortune, and that he resembled a man, who once stumbling neuer left reeling, till he came to the ground, or one whom shrewd Turnes, (as it were in sequence) followed after one another: his modest anger could not refraine from inuection, and passionat complainning against his Fortune: But when *Anzitemus* stomached the dishonor, because his Councell consorted not with successe, and that he saw a further procrastination of his businesse, little needed *Artabanus* to trouble conceite, how to winde vp the Wheeles of this engine: For he importuned the iorney in person, and opposed against the difficulties obiected: Whereupon the *Magi* and *Haruspices* were commaunded to attend, who by their sacrifices deuined the greatest and happyest euent, and *Anzitemus* with a well prouided and sufficient Armie passed through all the borders of *Persia*, possessing the strongest holds, and after in three encounters preuayled against *Astiages*, enforcing his retreate to the strong Towne of *Susiana*, where the place almost impregnable made him lye a while houe-

The story of Anzitemus and Astiages.

" ring like a skilfull Faulken, that with aduantage he
" might seaſe on his prey.
" By this time had report added much to his glory;
and that made the comparison betweene his true
vertue and *Astiages* ill disposition stand him in
great stead. For when vntoward remembrance had
layed open the recordes of all their strange acci-
dents, which turmoyled *Persia*, they reckoned
themselues in the rancke of vnhappy subiects vn-
der an vnhappy King, the rather for that the Roy-
all *Artizemus* came orderly to demaund *Mataſſes*
deliuery, and to propound the former articles
of peace vnto them by the Maryage of *Roxana*
to *Darius Artabanus* sonne, and so to dismisse
his Armie. But the disloyall *Astiages* not only en-
treated him with scorne, but barbarously murde-
dred *Mataſſes*, & like a Monster in nature, brought
him in seuerall Dishes dismembred before them all:
and thus with a violent gesture, vngorged his mal-
lice. Why base fugitiue? Art not thou the wret-
ched sonne of a more wretched Father, whom
his Country scorned, and people exiled? what
monstrous presumption hath belotted thee to
terrefie *Persia* with wonder-making deuises,
as if I were an infant vnder a foolish Mother
to be beaten with a Rod, and appeased with a
trifell? Or dost thou suppose with thy vntoward
proceedinges, by the helpe of my owne subiects,
Traytors to our God and me, to affright or dismay
Astiages, who if the worst fault will teare out his
heart

Astiages murdreth Mataſſes.

heart,and throw it in thy face? thou art deceiued, Vacabond as thou art: yet becauſe you counterfeite a kinde of embaſſage, your iorney ſhall not altogeather be fruſtraite; heere is *Mulcaſſes*; here is *Aſtiages* that brought him; and heere is the contempt of *Armenias* power,and *Artabanus*, that ſent him: Thus is your farewell concluded, vnleſſe you meane to ſupply the defects of my entertainment with this cheare.

But what cheare could the vncheered company make; when the hideous ſpectacle daunted the ſtouteſt courage? or what anſwere might they frame, that knew not how to ſpeake, becauſe they could not; nor could, becauſe they durſt not; nor durſt, being ſo appauled? the company of his owne obedience ſtrangely altered, and the reſt ſooner altred, as hauing no cauſe to obey: yet doe not imagine they ſate long to behold,or durſt, as they ſate, behold ſo vilde a ſight: But riſing in a mutinous turmoyle,ſpent the ſhorteſt time in exclamation,& offerd ſuch violence, as the place and number permitted: but in vaine doe they attempt further,for feare, and ſhame; or ſhamefull feare hath caried his hatfull body into ſome remoat corner, where affraide to ſee the miſhappen deformitie of his minde,he ſmothered all the motions of reformation with a working conceite of more miſcheife.

By this time is the Cittie in Armes, as terrefied with a ſuſpition of their owne ruine, and moſt of them

them came to behold the Lamentable ſpectacle, whereof the amaſednesſe made them fly one from another, notable to comfort one another, yea they miſtruſted one another, had not *Anzaremus* rightly conceiuing, what might ſucceed after ſuch impreſsion, thus recalled and recomforted them. Oyee diſtreſſed and abuſed *Perſians*, whoſe former renownes made *Aſia* the ſtore-houſe of Honour, and honourable reports; now doth the
" fauour of bleſſed influence ſmile vpon you: now
" may you redeeme your captiued happineſſe: now
" may you ſettle your deſires of reformation. For,
" hath not your infamy by three diſſents been like a
" loathſome Leproſie to the whole face of the
" world, euery man hating, yet daring not but diſ-
" ſemble? How did *Ormiſdates* tyranny make your
" Cities like a Butchery? How did *Aſtyages* make
" you reſemble Seruants watched by the eye of a
" hard-harted Nigard, who no ſooner take bene-
" fite of his abſence, but loyter in deſpight, and wiſh
" him to the Diuell? For you know, how he dyed &
" you know you nere cared to examine, How hath
" *Aſtiages* played the imprudent tutor, with you
" whoſe rage ouercommeth diſcretion, making wil-
" fulneſſe the author of Correction; and dulling with
" vngentle behauiour, ſuch as otherwiſe would be
" very tractable: For you cannot deny, but the beſt
" haue been ſuſpected, the meaneſt deſpiſed, the Citys
" ouer exacted and terrefied; the Countries abuſed,
" the Lawes infringed, the Fayth of Princes violated,

and

and the respect of *Artabanus* had toward you inhumanely reiected. Lastly, (and would it might be the last of all your mischiefes) it is hee, which is the Author of all these feares, and with his owne hands (as you see) murdered *Mukasses*, a Noble man of *Media*, an Embassadour of Peace! Yea, such a Peace, whose progresse had brought you to the Pallace of Happinesse; whose retardance warranteth your vtter ruine, and vnlesse you condemne this Monster for poysoning the Spring of *Persias* glory, and hate him, that durst hate Honour, Vertue, and Goodnes: *Armenia*, *Media*, and all the powers wee can make, shall contract a-gainst you.

To this enforcement, some of their owne Nobilitie present at the vnhappines (whether taking in scorne the disgrace, as though they had been vsed for instruments of Infamie, or obseruing *Anxitemus* Maiesty and demeanour with delight) added their witnesses and confirmation; which made the company (euer flattering the preuayler whosoeuer) submit to *Anxitemus* appoyntment, and vse the best meanes for all their safeties: whereupon hee admitted most part of his Forces into the Towne, and so by being Maister of the principall Seat of the Kingdome, thought it a good step to forward his businesse.

Anxitemus forces admitted into Sinesiana.

Astiages desperate of recouery, considering Anzitemus possessed his Kingdome, flyeth to Cleonidas.

BVt by that time the next morning had wiped away the dolefulnesse of the night, a new Alarum rayſed the Armie, and diſturbed them all: For *Aſtiages* certified of this diſaſter, wherein his wilfulneſſe had entoyled him, and how hee was in a manner caged vp within his owne Cittie, of which before his eyes a Stranger had the poſſeſsion, tooke it ſo ill at Fortunes hands, that all enraged, hee thus encouraged his fauourites.

"Oh (ſayth hee) there is no truſting to any place "wee haue wronged; beſides, our prouiſion can- "not long laſt, though the Hold (as wee may for- "teſie it) ſeeme impregnable, and to driue you to vn- "preuentable miſchiefes when the enemie will in- "creaſe, as well in number as in Pride; and for- "mer diſgraces ſet other on worke to reuenge, is "that I may not, nor will not ſuffer. Let vs there- "fore now ſet vpon them, as they are debating the "matter, and by fyering the Citie, wee ſhall draw "the moſt of them to looke to their priuate and ſo "in not preuayling, preuaile to make our eſcape in "the hurliburly: For the reſt, let the changes of time determine, as they may. Theſe ſpeaches, and the performance, had but one hower: for his Souldiers with firebrands in their hands, came running through the ſtreetes, killing all they met, and caſting them into euery houſe they could enter, and although the neceſsitie of their buſineſſe proiected only eſcape for *Aſtiages*: yet as if they had been to Sacke the place, the miſeries of ſuch change ſucceeded,

ceeded, murdring all sortes without difference of sexe or age, pillaging, taking of prisoners, rauishing of women, and mingling a cruell victory and dissolute pleasure together, till *Anzitemus* ouertooke them Whirling downe the streete to the water-gate, where some forces had intercepted their passage, whereby an equall mett manhood grew to the greater proufe, when the streightnesse of the place compelled to fight or defence, and *Astinges* played his part so well, that all men had him in admiration. For the troopes were weakned, the arayes broken, the assailants slaine, the retirers dismembred, and this new feate bread new confusion: But when *Anzitemus* had resembled him to a rauenous Mastife in a hunger starued night, who carelesse of the owners welfayre breaketh into a company of sheepe, mangling more with the chafe, then necessitie, he pressed neerer to single him out, and his modest anger could not refraine from thus reprehending him. Oh infatiate homicide! What Tiger cherished thy infancie? or dieft thou sucke the Teates of cruelties, that thou scornest all vertue, humanytie, and true manhood: and soothest each venemous motion with a false obedience to stubborne will; surely the Gods are not such as our reuerence adore; If this impietie haue with her spring alike repining Harueft; Nor are men worthy the earths encreafe, if they suffer this outrage; and let *Anzitemus* be forever defamed; if he endeuour not to

puniſh ſuch a wretch. But when *Aſtiages* heard the name of *Anzitemus*, and knew that this was hee, which entred his Realme, with-drew his Subiectes from him, tooke his Townes, was now Maiſter of the Citie, and had driuen him to theſe ſtreightes; the outward franticknesſe proceeding from inward diſtemperature, beat the Earth, gnaſhed his Teeth, and bitt the very Corſelet hee wore: Yea the rage changed his countenance to a duskiſh blackneſſe; which ſhewing the ſtrange effect of hate opened the ioynts, whereby the veines ſpurted out their fulneſſe; and not able to proceed any further, then oh yee infernall powers, hee made his Sword the Hearald of a dangerous Defiance, whoſe force tryed, whether *Anzitemus* ſtrength could abide it falling, or courage vphold him ſelfe ſtaggering, the ſtanders by imputing it both to Cunning and Fortitude, that that one blow had not finiſhed the tryall: Now was *Anzitemus* put to the pollicie of an out-facing retreat, not in any diffidence of the Combat, but in hope of better aduantage: For perceiuing his Aduerſary bent to ouermaiſter him, with actiue warineſſe he bare off the burden of infinite ſtrokes; but finding at laſt, the Tirant wearied with making too much haſte, and that his Strength beeing ſpent, his Furie paſſed with a kind of ſtockneſſe, hee aduanced him ſelfe; and rebuking Shame encreaſed his courage, that *Aſtiages* might not auoide vnlacing his Armes, deuiding his Shield, nor

wounding his Body. And thus haue I seene a new made Fire tarry a while, vntill heate had dryed the moysture of the Fuell, and then in a sodaine flame to make reflexion of greater warmth: yet was *Astiages* loth to discouer either disabillytie or suspition, but striuing with an excellent courage, made it a perilous fight, and the perill bade them beware of the effectes, which was vtter destruction. And as when two mightie Lyons hauing both their Females in necessitie of food, happning at an instant on a little pray fall at such variance, that the scorne of distribution settleth them to be satisfied in the bloud one of another: So these as mightie combatants not acknowledging the least difference, determine, that life shall depart, before Honour be subiect to disgrace, whereby the strangenesse wrought an amaze, and the manner a kind of delight. For they taking vp the narrow Rome of the streete, the rest had libertie to breath as if they seemed weary in the Butchering one of another, and apprehended the end of all their troubles in the end of this controuersie: But *Astiages* seeing no hope of the conquest, and beginning to misdoubt himselfe, fell backe againe to his first resolution of escape, and remembring his League with *Cleomidas*, thought there was possibilitie to returne with sufficient fortune and Reuenge, if hee could get thither by any meanes: Whereupon, lifting vp the fayling legges of Courage with all the remainder of a worne-out Furie, he whirled

at the turning head of his aduersary a blow of too great perill, had not his eyes twinckling at the brandishing of the weapon, been a caueate to other motiones, wherby a sudden starting made his right foote slip, and the earth yeeld, so that thinking to giue forward, the body measured the ground with his length; which *Astiages* tooke hold of, and by crying *Anziremus* was slaine, in despight of opposition made for the time a fortunate escape, euery one confounded with the sorrowfull newes, and hindering one another with a tumerous entercourse; But their feare and griefe with a chearefull contrarietie is foune releeued by the vprysing of *Anziremus*, and although they could not satisfie him with reuenge on the person of the King; yet did they recompence him with the gift of the Kingdome, and with *Panegericall* ceremonies conducted him to the Pallace, not doubting, but as the Beare displeased with natures deformity by often licking fashioneth her young ones to an appointed shape: So would he deale with their dissolute Common wealth, and reforme what had misled the company amisse.

Astiages flyeth to his Ships.

But becaule I haue brought him to so good lodging, and that he found the beautifull *Roxana* there, I will quitt him, & leaue him, as vnwilling to enter into vnfortunate encounters, either concerning himselfe and father: or touching *Brizata* who might be suspitious to heare *Roxana* named. Nay (quoth *Trezebord* in his sisters behalfe) things

past are past care, & therfore I dare anouch *Brizacas* content shal consist in *Anzitemus* future respect, but they I perswade my selfe, will well agree. So shall we neuer (replyed king *Zalby*) vnlesse we be thankefull to the Prince for his discourse, and entreate the gratious *Brizaca* once againe to impose this taske on *Anzitemus*, For I protest, I long to heare, by what chaunce the director of all chaunces hath consented, that this meeting should be recorded in the volumes of admiration. But *Rugio* sayd, there was no reason in the suddennesse: For he had a purpose to shew the Princes the Arbour, which King *Zalby* so much liked, and they after they liked, so much commended: in this taking the benefite of the next sunnes aduancement: the Feast was prepared, but till it please them to rise from their solemnytie, I dare not begin to trouble you with the discourse.

Finis libri Tertii

pal accept care, & therefore I dare vouch Prince Trebizond shall continue in Amsterdam future refpect; but they I perfuade my Life, will well agree, So shall we ceace (reply'ed King Arby) valiant we be thankefull to the Prince for his discourse, and entreate the gratious Princess once again to impole this task on us. Gentlemen, For I preceife, I long to heare, by what chance the discourse of all chances hath conferred, that this meeting should be recorded in the volumes of Admiration. But King Arby there was no reason in the Indeavour: For he had a purpose to shew the Princess the Arbour, which King Arby so much liked, and they after they liked so much commended: in this taking the benefit of the next Iunes advantage: the Feast was prepared, but all is plaine them to rid from their Company, I dare vouchsafe to trouble you with the discourse.

Finis libri Tertij

THE FOVRTH BOOKE of the Hiſtorie OF TREBIZOND.

Imprinted at London by W. White
for T. Downes and E. Dawſon.
1616.

THE
FOVRTH BOOKE
of the Hiſtorie
OF
TREBIZOND.

Imprinted at London by W. White:
for T. Dawſon and E. Dawſon.
1616.

To the Honorable Lady CHANDOS.

HONORABLE LADY:

HOweuer Honour hath appeased your repinings, and as it were coosoned your Birth-right with the courtesie of England; *so that it seemes a disparitie to place you the last, that are eldest in blood, and as worthy as the best: Yet would I not exempt you from my owne poore Wishes; nay I durst not deuide you from your Mother and Sisters, least I might want the full participation of that grace and Vertue, which I proposed to my selfe from your fauour: Therefore I pray you giue me leaue to warme all benumming despaire with the Sunne of your Honor & acceptation; and amongst your other Vertues, let me both affright Despaire, that you will pardon my Errour, and strengthen my Hopes: that you will entertaine my good meaning, though it be but in the presenting of a Booke: For I protest, when I ran away hoodwincket with an opinion, it would passe in the World as the deceit of Idlenesse, there was a pleasure in pretending your Patronage; and more then a Hope, in naming my* Lady Chandos, *as a Mistris of this Dedication.*

Your Honors humbled in all impositions:

Tho. Gainsforde.

To the Honorable

Lady CHANDOS.

HONORABLE LADY:

Though Honour hath appeared your
repining, and as it were enclosed
your Birth right with the courtesie
of England; so that it seemes a
difficultie to place you the last, that
are ranked in blood, and as worthy
as the best: Yet would I not exempt you from any
competence (Ladies) may I alwayes derive you from
your Mother and Sisters, lest I might want the full
Participation of that grace and Vertue, which I propo-
sed to my selfe from your Honour: Therefore I pray you
give me leave to warrant all Detracting displeasures with
the Sanctuarie of your Honour's Acceptation; and among
your other Vertues, let me lastly affright Detraction, that
you will patronize my Errour, and strengthen my Pro-
positions that you will entertaine my good meaning, though it
be but in the perfecting of a Booke: For I protest, where
I vow away boldnesse with an opinion it would passe
in the World as the decrest of Idlenesse, there was a plea-
sure in preventing your Patronage; and more than a
Hope, in marrying my Lady Chandos, as a Misprisi of
this Dedication.

Your Honors Humbled in
all impositions:

The Gainsford.

The fourth Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.

NO sooner was the Solemnitie of the Feast ended, and the conuenience of the place renewed their desires to beguile tediousnesse with delight, but *Brizaca* propossessed *Anzitemus* the importunitie of the Princes to be made acquainted with his Story, and he surrendring obedience thus proceeded.

Anzitemus proceedeth in his owne story.

If I cannot deny, but the fortune of that Victorie (if I add not as an prosperer Title to the successe) shewed me with better hope, then *Astiages* tried in his election: Yet I protest, Ambition had no such scope, either to elate my frailtie, or admit of their offers, although peraduenture with my owne, and other auxiliary forces, I might haue auoided both forren and domestick repining: So that I made slight answer to them, and vrged againe in a manner denied to be so incombred: But they supposing a further worthynesse by my abashed drawing backe oppressed me with reasons of their loue, choice, and necessity, and compared on my behalfe ability, vertue, and desert: I againe remembring my fathers captiuity, and the

truſt repoſed in me by *Artabanus*, meant not to commit the my ſayth to a ſtrange gouernment of deceite, nor betray a good beginning to contumely: Therefore gathering togeather the beſt reputed amongſt them, I thus demeaned my ſelfe.

The Perſians would chooſe Anzitomus king but he refuſeth.

I vnderſtand (worthy to be beloued Lords) that ſome ſlender towardyneſſe in theſe proceedings, hath ouerſwayed better conſideration, whereby you determine to impoſe this ſouereignety vpon mee: but Wiſedome aduiſeth you to take heed in a politicall body, what [illegible] cauſe if that exceed not in all aptneſſe, the inferiour members, no concord can continue peace, nor conformity make a perfection. For though in a Monarchy ſeated in many degrees of diſcent, ſome one degenerating from the vertue of his predeceſſors, for thoſe vertues, and thoſe predeceſſors ſake is not all togeather impeached: yet in ſuch a kingdome, as this, if the place be to be ſupplyed with a man from the choiſe of others, neither muſt your obedience be abuſed, nor this wilfulneſſe maintained. Let not then my defects ſo bewitch your opinion with a ſparing regard of your ſelues: conſidering all that is, or ſhould be in ſuch a perſon (though I weare not ſuch) are in me wanting. For to be more particular; a King muſt as well ſeeke to haue his minde garniſhed with vertues, as his body with armed Souldiers: [illegible] if

it be pleasing to call these by their names, it is convenient to know them by their natures; which (if I bee not deceiued) are to bee thus deciphered. *Affabilitie* without Affectation, least a partiall admittance keepe such neere his person, as are noted with infamie, and a wilfull conniuency ouerpasse the great faults of his Officers. *Liberalitie* with Aduice, that his Reuenewes and Royalties may supply wantes without exactions, rather vpon necessitie vrging Benuolences, then wantonnesse commanding Impositions. *Magnificence* with Reposednesse, whereby the honour of the Court may bee kept vprightly Princelinesse, either at the nuptiall of his owne Peeres, or entertainement of forraine Embassadors. *Mercie* with Discretion, least the Wicked insult through presumption, and Iudgement complaine to see Vice vnpunished. *Reuenge* with Iudgement, least Pleasure raigne without Limet, and the Common wealth remaine neglected and disconsolate. *Loyalty* with Secrecy, least seeme abroad purchase hatred at home, and like occompence cause Iealousie and Mistrust to be depriuers of libertie. Concerning the troubles of disagreement, either in publicke or priuate hostility, he must haue *Depth of wisdome* to vnderstand, respect, and foresee. *Height of Courage*, as well to embolden others, as defend himselfe, considering many times challenges are made amongst Princes vpon one mans death, is the presentation of a Million of liues. *Largenesse* of Bounty,

" to honor, reward, and aduance, according to the
" well deseruing, and not opinion of meb. Regarde
" of Maiestie b that his state may strike a reuerence,
" and thoughtfull a desire and thought hath reached
" (yet the chiefest of adoues) of [illegible]
" zeale, whereby either hope of blessings will de-
" taine them in good courses, or feare of Iudgment
" correcte a bad disposition. These I wish (noble
" Lords) are the Ornaments of Kings, whereof the
" fruition is not so plausible, as the wanting grieuous;
" such is the difference in great affaires by discom and
" desert: but concerning my selfe, I am [illegible]
" ready in the like expectation of [illegible] and you
" either the necessitie of my fathers [illegible]
" me therefore neither betray your doubts to negly-
" gence, nor entangle my selfe with such difficulty
" but because your desires shall not be abroge than
" strange, I doe this aduise you [illegible]
" some a neighbour, a King and sufficient, yea so
" sufficient (that I need not be emplete his vertues)
" matching with Roxane affiance Daughter, with in
" the match ouermatch all your troubles, and new
" fashion your misshapen gouernment: which if
" you adent, as vrged by my selfe, Armenia shall
" be forcuer confederat, and [illegible] assu-
" red friend to Persia besides, vpon which kingdomes
" vnited, will accrue the great ability with God make
" ample your mightinesse for [illegible]

" To this, or the like purpose, did my speeches
" tend, whereby I somewhat pacified the fierce

force

forcements, but had a sparing answere concerning *Rescue*. For there wanted not those, which replyed, how her beautie and desert merited better hony hands, than so slightly to interest another with the possession of such life, and excellency; whereupon *Zaleppo* a cheife peere of the Realme, either stomaching my carelessnesse, or yet making me believe I should not leave them so vnprouided, hasted to the *Pallace*, and returned with the *Lady*, as if he ment to disprobate my simplycitie, that would ouerpasse a matter of such worth; and truely (most gratious *Princes*) such was the goodlynesse of her person, and the appearance of other perfections, that an exact amorist would not haue wished for better becomming. To be plaine, deuine influence ouerruleth mans purposes; for what a continuall presence might haue wrought, I know not, but Fortune euer Ominous vnto me, (except in my now happines) intercepted this progresse of affection, and by the returne of *Astiages* with that Monster of nature *Cleonidas*, whom I shall neuer name with patience, ouerturned both the foundation and the building of my desires.

Astiages returneth with Cleonidas who brought Arrabazes into Persia.

For *Astiages* stomaching the indignitie of the reuolt, and his owne discomfiture, presently fled to his ships (as he had before continued) and putting into the maine *Cashian* the next day encountred with this damnable associate, betweene Whom for the time passed some differences, their

one impeaching delay, whereby mischance Triumphed to his great discomforte: the other, excusing the matter by the Battaile with my father, and that he also heard *Adelphus* was returned into *Media*, which offered him leisure to the new rigging his ships and supplying his men: but when *Cleonidas* had fully conceiued the desaster of *Astiages*, he bad him quiet himselfe, and infused new life with the sight of *Artabazes* in Captyuitie, which the King tooke so passionately that he confounded two contraries, ioy and anger together: For neither remembring his vertues, nor greatnesse, nor allowing the present magnanimity outfacing his misery, with a fuller abruptnesse he plainely told him, that if at the first motion I did not deliuer vp the possession of *Susiana*, and depart quietly out of *Persia*: he would Torture him before my face in view of the Cittie: in which humour they Landed their Armie, and Soldierlike marched forward, surprising many places I had fortified, till a timely alarum gaue notice of their pretences, and occationed expedition to intercept them.

But to decipher the variety of humours, which the accident wrought, were to be as tedious now, as they were troublesome then: Some vnder Colour of remorse began to vpbraid their disobedience, that so soone consented to the deposing of a King for a casuall effect of distemprature: some ignominiously cowards began already to prepare for a flight, and these the only boilers in security:

some

Some absolutely wicked respecting nothing but themselues, made a continuall reuoult to the stronger side, a pollitcke preuention of their losses, though the obloquie remained: some with a kind of cunning spared both a reprehention of the enemie, and palpable flattery of the preuayler: some stomached the deiection of their houses, as rather wishing their owne aduancements, then repining at my successe: some neither hopefull to others, nor helpefull to themselues, onely wondred, that *Persia* should be so barren to elect a stranger ouer them; these men had willingnesse, but no power to doe hurt; some true Louers of the Common-wealth proclaimed mee Protector of the Realme, and maintained the charge of the Warre with their owne, and the Cities Treasure.

Now was I some what perplexed to be resident amongst so many vnstayed dispositions: yet vnwilling to receiue notice of euery slender occation, I applyed my selfe to the time, taking a generall Oth of the Cittie, wherein I referued the hostages of diuers Noble men: besides *Roxana* remained as a pledge for my securytie, and seemed contented, so her fathers life might be spared: but not meaning to truft my selfe within a place, where death had a hundred wayes of trechery, nor desirous to be affrighted with the tumults and turmoyles, to which the people vpon euery alteration are incident: I chose from amongst them

one impeaching delay, whereby mischance Triumphed to his great discomforte: the other, excusing the matter by the Battaile with my father, and that he also heard *Adelphus* was returned into *Media*, which offered him leisure to the new rigging his ships and supplying his men: but when *Chonidas* had fully conceiued the desaster of *Astiages*, he bad him quiet himselfe, and infused new life with the sight of *Artabazes* in Captyuitie, which the King tooke so passionately that he confounded two contraries, ioy and anger together: For neither remembring his vertues, nor greatnesse, nor allowing the present magnanimity confacing his misery, with a fuller abruptnesse he plainely told him, that if at the first motion I did not deliuer vp the possession of *Susiana*, and depart quietly out of *Persia*: he would Torture him before my face in view of the Cittie: in which humour they Landed their Armie, and Soldierlike marched forward, surprising many places I had fortified, till a timely alarum gaue notice of their pretences, and occationed expedition to intercept them.

But to decipher the variety of humours, which the accident wrought, were to be as tedious now, as they were troublesome then: Some vnder Colour of remorse began to vpbraid their disobedience, that so soone consented to the deposing of a King for a casuall effect of distemprature: some ignominiously cowards began already to prepare for a flight, and these the only boilers in security:

some

Some absolutely wicked respecting nothing but themselues, made a continuall reuoult to the stronger side, a politicke preuention of their losses, though the obloquie remained: some with a kind of cunning spared both a reprehention of the enemie, and palpable flattery of the preuayler: some stomached the deiection of their houses, as rather wishing their owne aduancements, then repining at my successe: some neither hopefull to others, nor helpefull to themselues, onely wondred, that *Persia* should be so barren to elect a stranger ouer them; these men had willingnesse, but no power to doe hurt; some true Louers of the Common-wealth proclaimed mee Protector of the Realme, and maintained the charge of the Warre with their owne, and the Cities Treasure.

Now was I some what perplexed to be resident amongst so many vnstayed dispositions; yet vnwilling to receiue notice of euery slender occation, I applyed my selfe to the time, taking a generall Oth of the Cittie, wherein I reserued the hostages of diuers Noble men: besides *Roxana* remained as a pledge for my securytie, and seemed contented, so her fathers life might be spared: but not meaning to trust my selfe within a place, where death had a hundred wayes of trechery, nor desirous to be affrighted with the tumults and turmoyles, to which the people vpon euery alteration are incident: I chose from amongst them

eight Thousand of their Principall men, and mingling them with my owne forces, was assured no man durst wisper mislike, nor slacke his manhood, when it came to the tryall; with these I encountred *Astiages* and determined to put all to the deciding of one day; which he tooke in very good part, and made me beleeue his resolution corresponded: For presently his Armie suffered a fourfold diuision, one part whereof attended the cariges, and secured certaine passages; the Reare was committed the trust of *Cleonidas*: the Battaile was ordred by *Pyragmon* a brother of *Zaleppos*, and the *Vann* (crossing the method of former directions) impatience made *Astiages* himselfe to conduct: When the skout Masters of our Campe certefied thus much, I prepared accordingly, and would willingly haue giuen the first charge, in hope to single out *Astiages* or *Cleonidas*: But I was not permitted to make vse of such forwardnesse, because as they sayd they would not hassard me in such sorte: for that *Alcastus* had the Honor of the first encounter, and the battailes in a manner stood idly outfacing one another, by reason wherof I saw *Astiages* comming gallantly to the charge; he was easily knowne by a basiliske on the Tope of his caske Crounced and crisped, and Roundabout lay many liuing Creatures dead, out of his mouth issued a scrowle containing this Mott, *In Vi-su Mors.*

His Troope was well armed, appoynted, and as it should seeme, encouraged: for they assaulted the strongest *Cassibuts*, flancking our foote, and performed actions worthy the best report: but too too preiudicate he was so quickly engaged, that Danger lifted vp her voyce, as if it came to tell him, Death was the reward of Tirany and Prehumption: But yet such was his fortune, that exclayming on the fugitiue *Anzitemus*, the banished *Anzitemus*, the trayter *Anzitemus*; *Anzitemus* quickly presented him selfe, though neither fugitiue, banished, nor trayter; and of purpose to rebate the wrath of the Souldiers (who by this time had beawen him a peeces) offered a priuate Combate, if vpon the determination my Father might be deliuered, and the Articles of peace renued.

The cruell vnfortunate death of Arrabazes Anzitemus father, in reueng whereof he followeth Cleonidas to Sea, and there encountreth him, as in the first Chap. of the first Booke.

BVt as I expected the returne of some allurance of contentment, *Cleonidas* acquainted with *Alinges* distresse, hastned to the place, and vnsorging his venemous stomacke, suggested hee would take off my Fathers head, if I did not presently set *Alinges* free. O Gods! that I liue to report my disgraces, considering *Cleonidas* liued vnreuenged: For, whether my impatience hindred the Organs of my voyce, or the Zeale of my well willers transported them to the enterprise, I know not: but I was not able by threats, intreaties, or promises, to preuent the mischiefe, which followed

followed: For they not admitting to childish a terrour, made at *Cleonidas*, & with some wounds enforced his retreate; the rest ouercharging *Astiages*, gaue him neither leaue to repent, or exclaime: and not appeased with his death, added reproach to his fall. For a Brother of *Mitraustes* dismembred the body, and threw the cut-off head at *Cleonidas* before vs all; who taking it in opprobrious manner, Swatenee would solemnize his exequies with an equall Sacrifice: and in that impatience, made his passage through the Troopes, crying, Reuenge, Reuenge; and contrary to all manhood, or honour, posted to his Tent, where the euer resolute *Artabazes* was the subiect of his wrath, and shrunke vnder the burden of a sauage hand. In whose vntimely death, the case was the more lamentable, because so sufficient meanes, as I was interessed in, might rather warrant a recouerie, then suspend his hopes. But why trifle I my Discourse, when it is a courtesie to tell the worst of a misfortune quickly? So soone as his pernicious hate had brought this Tragedie to a period, with a tender repentance hee wished it vndone, and sent mee word of the remorce; which I taking in scorne, found the message rather to exasperate my reuenge: in which moode, I hasted to the enemy of my loue; who mistrusting mine ende, fled to his Shippes, and quickly make *Persia* ashamed of their fault repeated in his vallour: but the most of his Fleete was vnready, whereby hee was enforced

The death of Astiages.

Cleonidas killeth Artabazes.

to

to take such as he found, and ordred the rest to follow with speed.

Now had I time to condemne the trechery, suspect some plot of mischiefe, blame the quable compagnie to intercept him, exclaime on the cowardice of the Souldiers, and make faultie I knew not whom, or what: Yet at last, Aduice recalled mee to suppose, that deferring would occasion him to be the better prounded, and if hee once escaped, to bee setled in his strength, it would proouke an aduenture of more danger and difficultie to dissease him: I therefore allowed Direction no further scope, but made after with all speede, and embarked in the rest of *Clamidas* owne Ships, which we enforced to serue our turne: But by that time extremitie was a little moderated, I began to cast many doubts, as how *Clamidas* was attended, which way his resolution accelerated, and whether our owne company were sure to vs or no. These particulars by examining the Mariners, and some others attending in the Shippes, were soone answered, that *Clamidas* had eight Shippes, and would without doubt, make toward the dry *Ilands*. Other questions were of like importance, and yet expected their solutions: so wee cast many of them ouer board, leauing as few to consume or hinder (as wee could) and seeing wee possessed twelue, nothing was thought on, but a fortunate encounter; which ere the next Sunne had mounted to the height of his maiestie, bade vs bee our-

owne

owne Iudges of: for we mistooke the Pirate, who mistaking vs for his owne Company, somewhat slacked the winde, and in a manner raised our approaches.

But when our diffidence produced a strange contrarietie, neuer made his mischeiuous conceit any shew of barrennesse, till now: For out of all comfort either by conuention or conuulsion to auoide the imminent perill, hee blasphemed both Heauen, Earth, and Sea, storming at the accident, as though hee had been betrayed to destruction, which almost made him open the doore to death with his owne hands: yet being remembred by some one better considerat of the many changes depending on the actions of men, hee recalled both "Iudgement and Courage, and began the fight in "such manner, as you see a Fleet marshalled to "make the state of warre show by good order. For our "losses were equall a long time; and a man fell a- "mongst them, another dropped amongst vs: as their Slinges and Arrowes endamaged vs, our Stones and Fire-pikes slaughtered them: at last their Fire-workes were to many for vs with effect, our Shot were not cast without proofe; in fine, the smallest Barckes felt the inconuenience of many dangerous leakes, and were vnwarily sunke with their Ordinance before fiue faces, whereupon I commaunded to grapple, fearing indeed the Sunne had fled from our wretchednesse, and disdained to ouerlooke so ruthfull a spectacle. Besides, the Night like an vn-

welcome

welcome guest comming both vnlookt for, and vnbidden, approched to disappoynt vs, and made vs enforce our selues seeming most braueſt, when we could leaſt hurt; and in the end of our furie beginning a new worke of woefulneſſe. But *Cleonidas* either of deſpayring the euent, or loth to disproportion his tyranous minde, euen when Death seemed weary, commaunded to set fire of all, and draw the Shippes in peeces; whereupon followed so lamentable a *Cataſtrophe*, as I thought no man happy, but such whom death had absented from the vnhappineſſe, which many howers continued in pitifull cryes; and heart-rending exclamations; nor wanted there horrible scriches, and execrable *Apoſtacy*. To this the fire added a woonderfull terrour, appearing as if it determined to quench the *Ocean*; but moſt aptly I thought it a pollecie of Deſtruction, to light vs to Hell. And truly (my moſt gracious *Brizaca*,) though now dearer to mee, then my deareſt life, yet were I not sure of the felicity collated by your ſelfe, I would not againe behold ſuch another *Stratagem*, no not in hope of an other *Brizaca*: For I am certaine not foure men liued, though none eſcaped what was ten times worſe then death; and how some deuine influence ouerlooked me, I know not; but I well remember, vnleſſe I should haue haled death with my owne hands, it could come no faſter toward mee: Yet it was my chaunce to light on a broken peece of *Cleonidas* owne Ship, hauing no

Cleonidas and Anzitemns fight at Sea as in the beginnig.

other comfort, then in the meditation of my laſt end, reſoluing neuer to pollute my then cleane thoughts with any dregs of worldly compounds. In this manner *Placandus* ſounde mee, and within a while againe I loſt my ſelfe: but how that recouery chanced beyonde my deſert, you can beſt tell, that haue payde the ranſome of my redemption.

Now by the bleſſed eſcape of thoſe dangers, I ſweare (quoth *Brizaea*) you haue affrighted mee with this Diſcourſe; But ſeeing it is your pleaſure to take hold of a new Comfort, and ſuppoſe mee the *Antidote* of theſe greeuances: Let your Hopes be neuer interdicted; and curſed be the occaſion of infringing our deſires: which was vttered with ſuch vehemency, as if true Loue determined to tell the paſſengers, heere was his Manſion: For the teares diſtilled from her eyes, as "if the hart melting within had ſought out a paſſage "for the moyſture: So haue I ſeene thee ſweete Roſe "leaues quickly couered with a Still, and feeling a "change by the working heate, droop out his delli-"cate fauour amongſt vs. When *Anzitemus* ſaw thoſe excellent Lampes filled ſo vnkindly, hee ſtepped vnto her, and meant to dry them with his kiſſes: but not preuayling, he put his owne vpon them to like Spunges to ſoake them vp.

While this extaſie continued, diuers matters were debated betwixt the King and the other Princes, who well pleaſed in *Anzitemus* diſcouerie

nerie, be transported to the admiration of his Vertues by considering his worth, presently made offer of themselues and powers, to the effecting whatsoeuer was expedite for his Honour. Yet (quoth *Trezabero*) seeing *Cleonidas* hath commenced so often vntoward occasion of remembrance, let vs exact of your kindnesse a relation of his estate and condition. What can I deny such desert? (answered *Anzhemus*) and though you haue taxed mee with a dangerous imposition, as that I must aggrauate my sorrow with the repetition of the cause, and awake Impartialitie to say the truth of my Enemie: yet doe I well vouchsafe to be thus his Historiographer.

The story of Cleonidas and Artaxata: with Armenus taking her part possessing the Kingdome and denominating the Country.

AFter the aged *Sagremus* of *Thessaly* was made acquainted with the honourable expedition of the *Ionialists* to *Taurica*, (where *Diana*s siluer Tree exposed such honour and reward in the atcheeuement) in manner of a fatherly exhortation he counselled his sonne *Armenus* to make tryall of Fortunes curtesie amongst the rest, who more forward, then fortunate prepared for the iorney, and was enrowled amongst the other Princes to accompany *Telpinas* (whom the casting of Lots had made their Captaine in the enterprise.) Now by that time the Soldiers had taken possession of the Harboun, and *Telpinas* was newly seated in *Chersona* adiuising how

to proceed: *Ariaxata* a *Queene* extract from the greateſt bloud of *Cilitia* and the ſpatious Countryes vnder the Mount *Taurus*, came in perſon to the Court, where this Noble aſſemblie kept reſidence, and had by this time filled all *Aſia* with wonder at the attempt:) and like a Prince in whom a magnanimous Countenance ſeemed the Ornament of an *Heroïcke* ſpirit with her aſſociat affabilitie, neither manlike, nor effeminate thus excuſed her ſelfe.

" I am come to thee (thou Honorable *Gre-*
" *cian*) induced, as much by the hope of thy ver-
" tues, as fame of thy actions: For this is ſubiect to
" alteration by the reporters partiallytie: that re-
" maineth like a ſquared die euery way caſt ſtanding
" vpright, I will therfore firme this Anchor on the
" ſufficiency therof, not doubting but to moue ſome
" ſpirit to add to his owne Honor and my glory,
" when he ſhall vnderſtand a woman, a Virgin, a
" Queene, is wronged and in diſtreſſe: For true
" Nobillity is decipherd in thoſe famous exploites
" of releeſe, not in vaine oſtentation or enticementes
" of ambytion: So long then hath my fathers
" houſe continued in proſperitie, that either the
" Godes enuied our eſtabliſhed mightyneſſe, or
" Fortune (ſtomaching the razing and ſubuertion
" of *Coloſſeum* a Temple once dedicated to her) con-
" ſented to haue this neglect or rather contempt pu-
" niſhed, and performed it with the indignytie of a
" Trayterous reuolt, at ſuch a time, as when Maie-

ſtie

ſhe ſcorned the preſumption of a Subiect, and Loue fled from an vnkind Compulſion: For no ſooner was my Fathers Exequies celebrated, but my eſtate bade mee ſtep into the Chaire of Controulment, wherein I prepared to ſit with the applauſe of all my Subiectes, had not *Cleonidas*, an ancient enemie to the peace of many Prouinces, perſwaded an inuiolate perpetuity, if I would admit of his loue, which (as he ſayd) proceeded from the fountaine of true Deſire, and acknowledging my Vertues: But I tooke it otherwiſe; that the greedineſſe of Ambition had taught him a politicke leſſon of paſſion, and rather haſted him to counterfeit his liking; which made mee impugne the forwardnes, and not without ſome tearmes of reprehention (yet farre from reproch) diſmiſſed him, as if I expected a further corroboration of my eſtate. At laſt vrged againe with a kind of preſumption, or rather careleſneſſe of my Royaltie, in a quiet manner of diſdayne I aſſured him, I neither feared his Mallice, nor regarded his Fauour; but in deſpight of Confederats, would haue him an exemplary obedience to the reſt of my Subiects.

This he tooke in great reproch, and ſoone made apparant the Barrenneſſe of the ground, wherin the Seedes of his loue were ſet: For vnder Colour of indignitie to the Realme, that ſuch a iuriſdiction, and ſo many worthy men ſhould betyed to the wilfulneſſe of a woman, he rayſed a dangerous faction,

Cleonidas conderateth with Colphurnius a Gyant,

" faction against me, and for the better countenan-
" eing his Treasons seduced, and with great summes
" of Mony hired *Colphurnus* the Giant of *Taurus* to
" be his Colleauge: a man or rather a monster re-
" specting nothing but disorder, and louing no crea-
" ture saue himselfe: a man euer terrified with pro-
" digies, allowing religion and conscience but a
" pollycie to restraine the forwardnesse of some
" brauely disposed: a man implacable in his furie,
" and ouer insulting if chance or mischance afforded
" him superiority: To conclude, such a one, as
" scorned my simplicity, and mocked *Cleomides* am-
" bytion: yet gaue winges to this attempt, rather
" that his owne greatnesse might appeare, then for
" any willingnesse to ayde the other. Thus in ouer-
" daring manner they came once againe to demaund
" my consent, which I protest I now reserued more
" charylie, and reiected him as ridiculous, to see a
" man professe kindnesse, and expresse hate, sue for
" fauour, and threaten despight: wish peace, and
" procure Warre: propose goodnesse, and dispose
" mischiefe: plead for remorse, and determine re-
" uenge, vsing me as some in-discreete fathers their
" Children, who many times beat them without
" cause, alleadging Conscience, and the necessity of
" correction: But when *Colphurnus* heard my de-
" mand, (onely maligning that his presence wrought
" no better with mee) hee stormed beyonde all the
" limits of reason, and trayled at once, as if the name
" of a *Queene* had neuer been heard of: which

though

though I was not ſo happy to preuent, yet was I ſo bold to diſclayme. Proudbeaſt (ſayd I) whom the Heauens haue excluded, and the Earth ſuppoſeth burdenſome, though thy Senſes neuer participated any ciuill ſound, and the name of Vertue had onely the eſtimation of ſuch a word; yet how durſt thou neglect the due regard to a Prince, which the vnreaſonable creatures in their kinde fulfill? But ſeeing Nature ſometimes yeeldeth to Errours, that the perfect may be diſcerned by the vnperfect, I allow thee a Monſter amongſt Men; and yet reſolue, neither ſhall thy body eſcape vnpuniſhed, nor thy ſoule (if I may ſuppoſe it in ſuch deformity) vnpardoned. Thinke (honourable Lords) this much impeached his patience, and haſted them to trifle no longer; whereupon they ſpoyled my people, depopulated the Country, ſubuerted my Townes, and weakned my Forces; which with my owne perſon, they had vtterly defeated, had I not tooke aduantage of the ſtrength of a Caſtle, wherein I remaine at this inſtant beſieged; and vnleſſe ſome fortunate Aſpect doe heere looke vpon mee, I muſt ſubmit to the vntowardneſſe of a heart-vexing neceſsitie, (as for the place, I ſuppoſe it for a time impregnable in the continuance of their loyalties poſſeſsing it,) and not without ſome ſtrange ſtratagem, or ſurrender to be quickly commaunded. Now ſuppoſe much more might haue been ſpoken, and much better: but if I be vnderſtood, I am ſatisfied; and if ſatisfied, com-

comforted otherwise.

Armenus Sonne of Sagarenus assisteth the Queene Artaxata.

Nay (quoth the *Heroyck Armenus*) by your patience Royall Queene no more; and their Lordly leaues no lesse? then what soeuer the Gods haue imparted vnto me, to prostrate it before you; if then you dare commit so priseleſſe a Iewell to so slender a Guard, my fayth and endeauors shall surpasse outward meanes, and yet I make no doubte the Iustice of your cause, and the trophe of my reward shall incite me to effectuate any exployte within the reach of performance, so that if euer action were attempted for reasons sake, heere is reason vpon reason, and he an vnreasonable coward, that dare not make so honorable a progression: By this time her countenance was inuested with a new forme, and her gallant demeanor bred a desier in the rest to send fame on their Errands: But *Artaxata* vrged no further, nor troubled *Telpinas* with other importunitie, more then that she gratified him for his vertuous kindnesse and care for alotting a reasonable company to attend her, and sending a Messenger into *Thessaly*, to acquaint the aged *Sagarenus* with his sonns fortune.

In this Iollytie made *Artaxata* her returne, and because some questions may be enforced, concerning the Iorny, let me answere; such was her imparadised beautie, attractiue comlineſſe, gallant youth, sweete demeanor, and all gracing vertues that he seemed rather rauished, then enamored:

such

such againe was his seemly person, firmnesse of manhood, portly behauiour, delightsome countenance, & all helping Courage, that she remained rather ouercome, then pleased. So that with thankesgiuing to the Gods for this happy acquaintance, and seemely desires to be acceptable one to another; they concluded the Sunpathy of conditions and liking, should tye the indissoluble knot of affection: yet left he not thus, but with a serious enquiry of her affayres made way to better conceite of his wisedome: Whereupon she acquainted him with the peoples liberty, and the seeldome matched obedience in the liberties: the factions amongst the better sort, the alliance and priuiledges of her owne family, the manner of her fathers gouerment, and lastly made a distinction betweene men Enobled for the Court, and enabled for the Common-wealth: she also imparted the ability, state and conditions of *Leonides*, the beginning of his loue, and the proceeding of her troubles. But (quoth the respective *Armenus*) by what meanes escaped you the enemy in this flight, I will tell you that too, sayed the Queene.

Armenus & Artaxata contract.

After the report of your Greekish expedition had liberally acquainted vs with so many Princes, so many men of Vallure, as accompanyed *Thyrias* in the enterprise, and were then residen in *Taurica*: one time amongst others, as I was obsequious in my sacrifice with many imprecations, that they might be prosperously, and many many

deuotions to expiate my offences, me thought the *Penates* beckned a silence, and bad me hast to *Bellona* for redresse, wherin sure they determined my deliuery, for though the time of the yeere almost warranted better weather, yet that night and all the next day fell such a Snow, as if the heauen ment to shew vs some varietie: now by reason of a vault letting in the Riuer to the vse of the pallace, I conceiued how to escape by couering my selfe and and some few others in white Linnen, and truelie I will not now boast, but with an extraordinary life did I then passe vpon the Bancke, which the enemie had cast out of their trenches, at such time, as for very pitie they would not put foorth a *Sentinell* to watch, and so escaping to a place of more trust, then strength, I made such prouision as my hast permitted. But how now shall we enter (replyed *Armenas.*) As for that, (answered *Meraxes*) the influence, which hath hetherto ouer ruled, will not leaue this worke imperfect. Now by the protection, which followes vs, you haue beene readied me (sayed *Armenas*) in resolution, yet if it please you not to presage euee ill by feare or misdoubt, I haue thus deuised.

According to your description of *Orphorinus*, I gather his Courage and strength to be great, but his presumption and pride to be more, wherin such men goe forw and in immanitie, so that they are vnconquerable, but because opinion is terrified

with

with their hugeneſſe; and indeed reſemble ſuch Weedes, which while you handle daintily, will ſting till you ſmart; but vſe them with violence, they looſe their force and efficaſie. So that to offer priuate combate (which I am ſure his inſolency will rather deride, then reiect) may be the eaſieſt coutſe (though you may ſuſpect not the ſafeſt) to reuerſe your feares: For if I ſhrinke vnder the burden of a heauy diſaſter, perſwade your ſelf the old *Sagarenus* will draw all *Greece* to your ayde: or elſe your patience muſt proue an vnkind vertue: if I periſh, what would you deſire more, but that I ſhould periſh? Heere a ſtill manner of behauiour continued awhile, but at laſt brake vp with a yeelding chearefulneſſe: for it rather proceeded from the amaſement at his Vertue, then deſpaire of the ſucceſſe; and yet was there great diſparitie betweene them. Thus they approched the Enemies Trenches, who euery day expected ſurrender, or compoſition; little ſuſpecting that the Queene was abſent, or that theſe new-come troopes were worthy the name of a Supply; imputing it rather to their madneſſe and folly, which would wilfully put themſelues into danger without hope of recouery: Which when *Arbenus* perceiued, and that they forbore violence againſt them, the next day like a Herauld of defiance, and yet ſummoning a Parley, hee in this manner tryed their patience.

Although (yet abſent *Cilinius*) mans malli-

" ouſneſſe hath put in practiſe infinite preſtigious
" deuiſes, in ſo much that they haue not deſiſted to
" rebell againſt Heauen, and with monſtrous *Apo-*
" *ſtacie* to fight againſt the Gods; yet haue not thoſe
" faults paſſed without puniſhment: For ſubuerſions
" of Kingdomes, ſtratagems amongſt Eſtates, alte-
" rations of Common-wealths, maſſacres of Armies,
" and murdring one another, haue followed; witnes
" the *Titans*, the tranſlation of the firſt Monarchy,
" and ſuch infinite Warres as haue filled the world
" with teares and reproch; and ſhall no doubt, ap-
" peare as an inſtance amongſt your ſelues, for trea-
" ſon, immanity, and perfidiouſneſſe. But why tri-
" fle I with circumſtances? It is to thee *Clonides*
" I ſpeake; it is againſt thee thou Tirant *Eubarrus*
" I enueigh: the one a wicked Rebell to Soueraintey
" and Beauty; the other a monſtrous enemie to
" Maieſtie and Vertue; and both as ſcandals and
" reproches to Vallour and Honour. Was it euer
" allowed, that a Subiect durſt infringe the Lawes of
" Dutie and Alleagence againſt a Woman, a Vir-
" gin, a Queene? Was it euer heard that a man of
" Vallour, durſt offer violence (without impeach-
" ment of villany) to ſuch a perſon, whoſe vertuous
" Renowne hath mooued the Heauens to pitty her,
" as though you had been framed to terrifie the
" world, and ſent from Hell as Monſters in nature?
" If it be ſo, by all the names of pretious Goodneſs,
" by all the power of deuine Beauty, by all the
" worth of peareleſſe *Artaxia*, I conjure you re-

turne

turne from whence you came: If not so, I chal- "
lenge the one to repent his Insolencie; the other, "
to reforme his Crueltie. But if my speeches re- "
semble a loathsome Potion, or seeme vnseaso- "
nable, as attempting to compasse with a slender "
Oratorie, what many Thousands of armed men "
haue sayled in. Know then, that the royall *Ar-* "
taxata taking compassion of her Subiectes, and "
Kingdome, and to auoyde further effusion of "
blood, offereth by mee the first borne of *Sagare-* "
nus of *Thessalie*, a priuate Combat; wherein shee "
submitteth to the euent, so *Cleonidas* doe there- "
vpon surceasse the Warre. This hath the Queene concluded with princely stedfastnesse. This doth the Grecian *Armenus* confirme with resolute willingnesse.

Armenus offereth priuate Combate.

HEere the Soldiers stood amased betwixt remorce of their owne faults, and feare of their commaunders: but *Cleonidas* stormed the more, as remembring the desert of the *Queene*, and his misfortune to be reiected, or disappointed: and *Colphurnus* raged beyond reason and (according to the insolency of such persons,) yeelded to the motion though there came Tenn such Knights, wishing the dispatch, least his fury might put in practise further distemprature. But little needed such hast to destruction, for the next morning came *Armenus* into the field like a Knight well mounted, and orderly prouided, expecting *Colphurnus*, who made the more hast, by reason *Cleonidas*

found the Armie in feares at the accident: but when he perceiued the Gyant might not Ride, because of his highneſſe, he quickly yeelded his Horſe freedome, and very gallantly attempted the onſet on foote: beginning the Battaile with that brauery, that the ſtanders by expreſſed a very gladneſſe to be eye witneſſes of ſuch ſpirit and life; yet when the contention grew betwixt wary nimbleneſſe and furious ſtrength, and that the continuance detained them in ſuſpition, it encreaſed both pittie and amaſement: the one, leaſt ſuch a loſſe of Vertue ſhould chance by ouermatching the other to ſee a Giants force equalled, who indeed preſſed *Armenus* with vnkindly ſtrokes, but that *Heroyche* dexteritie auoyded the ſeaſure, & ſometime gaue him liberty and time to wound the other, whereby he ſpent much blood, and increaſed his impatience ſo farre, that he faſtned a blow which ſtrucke the *Prince* to the ground, to the terrour of both the Armies; who in their hearts wiſhed him fortunate, and ſhouted for ioy at his recouerie: of which *Armenus* tooke the aduantage, and ſeeing there was no enduring long, aduentured a cloze, and had the chaunce to run him vnder the ſhort Ribbes, and ſo made roome both for Death and Victorie to deuide themſelues: whereat *Clouida* blaſphemed Heauen as Earth, rather now ſhewing his willingneſſe, then ſufficiencie to maintaine the quarrell.

Golphurnus death.

By this time *Artaxia* diſcouered herſelfe, and

like the Sunne clearing the interposition of thicke Cloudes appeared the more glorious: so the Souldiers yeelded to mercy, and the people submitted as being before enforced: and because they would give notice of their dutie for a beginning, with the same Water that draue the Mill, they drowned the Mill, quickly chasing *Cleonidas* in his retreat; and taking him by force, brought him bound to the Queene; who at *Armenus* intercession, gaue him life, liberty, and ferled him in former estate, little suspecting, that courtesie to a Traytor, is a thankelesse office, and most commonly giueth but occasion of further hate and repining.

Cleonidas prisoner and restored.

With this beginning was the whole Kingdome pleased, so that the *Queene* might publish her will with successe, and *Armenus* succeed with publication & good will, possessing thereby a gratious *Armania*, and a spatious Country, which by way of recompence and satisfaction was contented to change her old name, and to be called *Armenia* for his sake: In this as a thankfull steward vnder an Honorable Lord he dedicated two especiall places, *Sagarena* and *Armarna* after his Fathers and Wifes name, which in time grew to be Rich, famous, and Populous Cities: but assured of the dissolution of any state without government, he established Lawes, as well to detaine the people in obedience, as to maintaine his owne prerogatiue, to which (because they seemed strict and contrary to former Customes) hee had much a doe to bring them,

Armenus is king and nameth the Country Armenia.

them, but at last, by politicke insinuation, and true magnanimity the great men applauded his carriage and temprature, and the people like their shadowes yeelded to what they allowed: so that few misliked, and such as misliked durst not complaine, vntill *Cleonidas* rebelled againe, as reprehending his owne baseneſſe, that he had been beholding to a stranger for his life, but a sufficient discomfiture made him fayle in the attempt, and his death warranted *Armenus* peace and stablishment.

Cleonidas rebelleth againe and dyeth.

This had yeelded a full recompence indeed, if he could haue preuented a double mischance. The one in suffering *Cleonidas* the sonne to enioy his fathers bad conditions with his estate; the other in being deuided from his Royall Queene, whose life was now brought to an vntimely period by a heart vexing sickneſſe; but heereiu some supernaturall power wrought for the best, because now Childleſſe, he after matched with *Tolmiranda* the *Assirian Sophy*, by whom he enioyed the fruites of his body in great towardlineſſe, and continued the rest of his time in a gratious peace, had not time ripened the wicked disposition of *Cleonides* the sonne, and hate as it were innated within him enforced many exorbitant actions, setting againe the kingdome in combustion, which he [illegible] better ordred and prenented. For his places of refuge were leueled with the ground, his [illegible] and wealth confiscate, his Allies and [illegible] vnder

Cleonidas the Sonne is banished Armenia and becommeth a Pirate.

areſt,

areſt, and himſelfe exiled the Kingdome, who otherwiſe might haue liued a glory too the kingdome.

Theſe warres and *Armenus* life had end togeather, wherupon my father *Artabazes* began his Royall raſe at ſuch time, as this *Cleonidas* entertained a conceite of reuenge by this courſe of Piracie, wherein thirty yeares continuance made him an archmaſter; and cuſtome in wickedneſſe ſo blinded him, that great faults were reputed ſlender, and ſmall ones not ſo much as imperfections: but the chiefeſt proppes too this wicked life, were the confederacie of many Princes, and his owne wealth vniuſtly amaſſed, with which in this latter time he maintained thirty well appointed Ships, and amongſt other *Stratagems* (as you haue heard) was beholding to the warth full *Nemeſis* for *Artabazes* loſſe, but whether deuine Iuſtice tooke my cauſe in hand, I know not. For the beſt part of my Fortune extended to ſee him curſing and raging amidſt the ouerraging Billowes.

Anzitemus declareth his fortune with Roxana the heyre of Perſia: and how he was preuented from Marrying her by reaſon of his purſuing Cleonidas at Sea.

AT this *Period Anzitemus* made a ſloppe, and king *Zalby* with the Princes acknowledged the delight of the ſtory, but the great affay- [illegible] portuned a further matter then [illegible], wherupon it was concluded, that the moſt of them ſhould accompany him into *Armenia*, aswell to ſecure his eſtate there, as to

contriue, how *Trezobore* might purchase his reconsiliation with *Mengrelius*: because if it were effected, it must be done by *Anzitemus* and *Brisacas* meanes; but she finding, how this businesse would detaine them awhile togeather, ment belike to make some vse of the spare time, and therfore like a true Louer, stepped into the first path of Ielousie, & could not forget the short, and passhionate description of *Roxana*, which caused her to vse a little cunning in the matter, and by making pittie a branch of vertue, she questioned with him of matters of Gouernment, of Geneologies, of Petigrees, what became of *Mitrea Astiages* Mother; and lastly, as if it fell in by chance of discourse, of *Roxanas* yeeres, how he satisfied the Princes, and how he could neglect such a proffer, as the mightie *Persia* contented? My only content (replyed *Anzitemus*) mistrust no idle disposition: For deuine appoyntment hath reserued vs one for another: yet will I assure you, such was, and I hope (I may hope) such is the preeminence of her beautie and louelynesse, that I protest excepting the incomparable *Brizaca*, she liueth peereleſſe, and well deserued a better regard, then my businesse permitted; and because you haue spurred conceite, and by a Rauishing presence encreased that sweete delight, which your company euer affoordeth: I will once be humorous in a slender description of her, so the louely *Brizaca* finde not too many faults, & apply that to her selfe now,

which

which I am sure might be allowed *Roxana* then,

What Cunning can depaint her prayses foorth,
In whom appeared such exceeding worth:
The outward substance all at once behold,
And thinke the Gods a secret to unfold:
Each part apart commend; then Nature will
Afford thee choyse of her approoued skill:
The Head resembled some rich golden Sphearе,
Which all the chiefest Lines aloft did beare:
Yet round about the Pu[illegible]tels did meet;
So fell her beauteous Locks euen to her feet:
The Face it selfe scarse durst a curious eye
Watch at the full: yet there we might espye
Fnuan and Loue ioyne hand in hand together,
To welcome a rare Guest Perfection thither?
This made her smile, & blush; and blushing smile,
(The lookers on deceiued all the while,
As though two colours had for maistry strauen,
And White and Crimson been togeather wouen.)
The Necke did any counterfeite surpasse
In out-stand shew: for Princely life this was;
Shewing a way where Cupid *vsd to stand,*
Telling the lookers on, Venus *once right hand,*
Cast vp those pretty Mounts, whose sides betweene
A pleasant Valley keepes delight vnseene,
Till it conduct thee to a bending Hill
Made like an Ivory Arch by curious skill,
Faire hanging ouer a well fashioned Dore,
Wherein are hidden thousand loyes and more:

The discription of Roxana.

Yet Chastitie holdes sure both Key and Lock,
Vnwilling that the Gods themselues should knock,
For though Gods vse to Paradise to goe,
Yet did they heere a Priuiledge bestow,
That none might enter against Vertues minde,
Least forc'd admittance proone the cause vnkinde.
Her Body bolt vpright in comely grace
Outmatched Pallas *for a stately pace:* (*thought*
Mounted on Horsebacke, you would sure haue
Bellona *had some gallant Battaile fought:*
Marching on foote, Diana *could not bee*
Amongst her Nimphs *more gallanter to see.*
With these, her yeares were like a timely Spring,
Which in an ouer-ioying Hope did bring
Her Blossoms foorth, all happinesse assuring
To him more happy in the soyles manuring.
With these her Vertues did proportionate
The qualities belonging to the state
Of high Magnificense, that we might know,
Shee was ordained a Princes *pace to goe.*
With these, a Kingdome was a mighty Dower,
A Kingdome full of Riches, Pompe, and Power:
Then thinke I had good cause to wish her well,
Who did with such great Priuiledge excell.

I protest (quoth *Brizaca*) you haue praysed her well; but I rather allow it for a custome of Idlenesse, then Necessitie, and finde it vnbefitting to Iudgement to admit of ouerpalpable Flattery.

What call you Flattery (replyed *Amziniuer*) Assure

Assure your selfe, that the Gods framing Man to commaund all the Creatures vnder the Sunne, neither shuffled vp their workmanship, nor were so careleſſe afterward, but with a great regarde ſent him foorth to publiſh their glory; and for that purpoſe gaue him prerogatiue of excellencie both in body and minde. This especially appeareth in your selues, to whom they haue vouchsafed deuotion, as finding time, and your owne vertues to perfect the worke, which they but began: And from hence proceedeth our resemblance of this outward substaunce, to a rich Treasure house made to secure more richer Wealth: Now, as Wealth is dispersed ouer the world to vse and good order, and without that lyeth hid like Earth within the ground: So your-selues are left in the world to comfort and benefit, according to the fortune of him, that possesseth you to happy purpose. Heere then resteth the cunning and grace, in the meanes of the seisure, which I auouch is first wrought by the instrument, the Tongue: For though some haue made a principle, that a Womans Eye doth guide her Witte, yet vnleſſe occasion be offred to discouer the liking, what good can follow. But to speake more generally; Are not Presents, faire Entreaties, and the causes mooning (your deserts) which must be prayſed, the ordinarie meanes of winning all Women? And are not all these like dead Ashes without liuing conference, beside the necessitie of conuersation, and

A circumstantiall commendation of pleasing conference.

Presents, prayers, praises winne women.

the true regard of Natures excellencies in you alloweth vertuous courſes to obtaine your fauours; which howſoeuer is determined, is yet begun with proteſtation; and when it extendeth to great perſons, compelleth a further ſearch, then in common Courſes: For neuer was *Miſanthropos* nor Tyrant ſo implacable, but beauty hath reduced: neuer was Beaſt ſo furious, but man hath tamed: Neuer was any thing ſo ſtrong, but truth hath ouercome, and how? by reaſon and ſweete enforcement. Belike then (anſwered *Brizata*) you ſuppoſe vs ſo ſimple, that we delight in vaine ſpeeches, and becauſe in Curteſie we entertaine communication, and would not altogether outcountenance you with diſdaine; we are therfore to be carryed away with lightneſſe. (Farre be it from my fraileſt immagination (replyed *Anzitemus*) but to proportionate with all reuerence your vertues, yet vnleſſe it be amongſt Pelants, or wretched Parentes, that frame contracts by endenture, where loue melteth with the Waxe, and weareth with the Parchment, I ſee no reaſon, but to ſue for good-will, and practiſe the beſt meanes to eſtabliſh (the happieſt life) contentment. As for Princes, though they make no Prentiſhippes of their loues, yet in the violence are they more paſſionate, then another, like a ſtrong body put to more paine in ſickneſſe, then a weake. But ſay there is inequalitie of perſons, as many times it chanceth, (for Poets make loue blind;) I hope then the inferiour

perſon

perſon applaudeth his Fortune, and ſtudieth with the helpes of art, nature, and induſtry to demeane himſelfe. For it were ridiculous, nay inhumane; to ſee a ſottiſh-man vſe preſumption toward you without inſinuation and conſent, which I neuer will eſteeme happy, if there be not a preparing by diſcreete parle: beſides, loue looſeth his ſweeteſt pleaſure without appearance of difficultie; Indeed (anſwered the halfe yeelding *Brizaca*) I thinke of an vnfained tongue as an excellent inſtrument to worke with, yet muſt no man goe about a Building without other prouiſion: For the greateſt deceite is ſhaddowed by ſmooth Oratory, as we ſound the deepeſt places in the calmeſt Channels. Not vnlikely ſaid *Anzitemus*, but becauſe a villaine doth a miſcheife with a Candell, ſhall we therfore vſe no light? doe not ſo conclude: For I am reſolued, that both contract of Maryage, and diſcouery of fancy are Dull enforcements without lybertie of ſpeech, and ceremonious complement: therfore blame me not for prayſing *Roxana*, and ratefying, ſhe was a deſeruer of all iuſtifiable deſires: yet I proteſt the ſorrow for her father, and her duety in the ſame, made me to ſtudy to pacifie her Corafines, rather then diſplay the Coulours of delight; and when I was vrged to ſolicite a new Courſe (which a meſſenger from *Artabanus* to pleaſe my ſelfe emboldned) thereturne of *Aſtiages* with *Cleonidas* quight diuerted me, and ſo I reaſſure you, ſhe was vnacquainted with my thoughts,

thoughts, and left to be a Lady of wonderfull expectation.

Anzitemus preparth to goe into his owne Kingdome of Armenia & after to present Trezoboro to the Emperor Mengrelius.

IN this manner did some dayes post after their forefathers, the spare time bestowed in acceptable communication to the better strengthning their loues; and the rest in serious matters for the dispatch of their busines, wherein *Anzitemus* after a little debating, went effectually to worke, desiering a loane of Fiftie thousand pound, and a generall League for the entercourse of Merchants; as for the kind proffers of the *Princes* to accompany him into *Armenia*, hee woul not oppose against it: yet gaue hee reasons, that hee meant in no sort, to detaine them from their home occasions. These poynts were mooued in the Senate of *Fortona* by *Trachinus* the Cittie-Orator, whom *Philano* for that purpose had sent for, and had receiued his instructions to this end, to certifie the people, that though *Anzitemus* desert compelled the greatest regard; yet would not the *Duke* without their consent, so slightly part with so great a Summe out of the kingdome, as for the Leauge, whereby freendship and Traficke might encrease, he referred that to themselues: much time was not spent herein: For the Cittisenns enterpreting the motion to to proceed from the *Dukes* wisdome and loue were doubly drawne to consent, as well to remaine gratious to *Rugio*, as to seeme men of respect and abillytie

abillytie to *Anzitemus*: beſides they offered a beneuolence toward the charges of this great entertainment (with ſuch extremytie are they caryed, that neuer ſo little croſſed in matters of wealth and ſuperſtition, they are hardly drawne without murmuringes to trifeles: againe quietly ſoothed with a meane allowance of libertie, they profuſely offer their Mony, and applaud that, which otherwiſe they haue dared to contradict.)

Thus was *Anzitemus* ſupplied, and which prooued aduantagious vnto him, hee bargayned with certaine Merchants by great for his conduct, neuer troubling the *Dukes* Nauie, nor his Prerogatiue to muſter vp new forces; whereupon with all conueniencie they prouided him fourty well appointed Shippes, and became creditors themſelues for foure Months pay and victuals: In the meane while, the magnificent Company departed, and King *Zalby* to augment his Nephewes honour, gaue *Philano* in preſent poſſeſsion the Prouince of the nether *Comagena*; which hee in great courteſie acknowledged: yet modeſtly reſpyted the ceremonies of his enſtawlement, till his returne. For hee would queſtionleſſe accompany *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus* into *Armenia*; wherein hee wrought a double contentment. Firſt, the Souldiers and Cittizens were ouerliberally pleaſed, as imputing loue and care toward them, the motiue of this iourney: next, *Anzitemus* apprehended it to his comfort, not doubting but

Philanos presence would keepe obedience in forme: besides the Treasure returned by so conuenient a Messenger would disburthen him of care and chardge to make a particular vioage. Now are all thinges ready for the departure, and the *Duke* accompanied them to their Shipps committing their iorny to auspicious influence, so the farwell suffering a ceremonious diuision, gaue the one occation to returne, and the other to steppe into the tract of worldly felicitie: but as *Anzitemus* studied to contriue his businesse, he stopped at this doubt, whether he should make directly for *Armenia*, or take *Media* in his way, where he was sure of *Artabanus* ayde, and the *Persians* loues: then againe remembring the Message of *Euphamia*, he supposed the seedes of dissention were buried past growing, and so he might be warranted of their true fayth: yet for all this to giue way vnto their opinions of his wisdome & gouernment, he called a conference, to which were especially desiered *Trezobero*, *Philano*, *Coranus*, *Bertosus*; as for *Ardemio*, *Mitranes* and *Obecam*, they thought themselues Honored in the matter, besides *Placandus* (whom he determined to fashion to the world, and bring his aged head with Honor to the graue) gloryed in the fauour *Anzitemus* began wih. All these resolued him, that the fame of *Artabazes* death, and *Astiages* ouerthrow, was alredy diuulged in *Armenia*, and that the dissentions betwixt *Media* and *Persia* receiued a period: only

ly the Maryage of *Roxana* was deferred, as not knowing how he was affected, and therfore without doubt he might determine for his owne kingdome.

Whereupon they made forward apace, and accordinge to their expectation without difficulty (more then the wonder of his returne, because they supposed him lost in the fight with *Cleanidas*) Landed in *Armenia* at the River *Erix*, from whence by easie Iornies ouer the Mountaines, they came to *Armamiranda*, where *Euphamia* was resident; to whom the people vpon report of *Anzitemus* ariuall, had flocked on heapes, desiring her to stand as a guard betweene them and his displeasure, considering their obedience since, and the reuenge vpon *Gestarius*, who had opened the Dore of the last troubles. To these she onely wished the continuance of their loyalties: but to certaine persons drawne into the faction with *Olmus*, and of inueterate malice for *Cleonidas*, (who made her beleeue they would be warranted their safety) shee absolutely denied to bee compelled: For if they determined truth, and vndissimuled duety, no doubt her Sonne (though *Artabazes* losse was irkesome to them both) knew what belonged to a remediesse matter. But little needed these suspitions; for *Anzitemus* knowing that strange courses bred as strange alterations; and that in a good beginning consisted the hope of successe, proclaymed a generall Pardon, and

eſtabliſhing of all men in their eſtates, offices, and places, that would ratifie his ſucceſsion.

Anzitemus returneth into Armenia & is inueſted King.

With this comfort was the whole Kingdome appeaſed, and for the better aſſurance of their faythfull hearts, they confirmed the prerogatiues of his Maieſtie, and conferred to him whatſoeuer belonged to a Kings perſon, eſtabliſhing thoſe Lawes, wherewith his Father and Grandfather had ſwayed the Common-wealth. The people brought in a guift of a thouſand Talents; the Officers to continue their places, liberally fined themſelues: the Nobilitie to renew their Immunities, ſent many Preſents: the Cities to ſtrengthen their Priuiledges, disburſed great ſummes: the Gentry to aduance themſelues, ſpared for no reaſonable matter; and the Courtiers to purchaſe fauoure, exceeded in coſt and diligence: But when the incomparable *Brizaca* was publiſhed their Queene, they paſſed in extremity of applauſe, and ſacrificed to the Gods for reſtoring their peace, and eſtabliſhing the Monarchy in ſuch worth and royalty.

THus was *Anzitemus* and *Briſuca* ſolemly inueſted, and looking backe with regard vpon the worth of *Euphamia*, affoorded her the dignities of her Widdowhead, and permitted her the fruition of many Pallaces and Priuiledges: beſides, in all Aſſemblies there was a Throane erected ſomewhat higher then his owne, that the people might know, ſhee was the Kings Mother, and how high-

ly hee desteemed her. Now though Fortune had taken off the maske of Despight, and shewed him a countenance of fauour; yet neither seemed hee vaine or elated, but reposed, and indeed moderating that excesse of ioy, which sometimes many Princes after their aduancements, cannot hide. But it may be the meditation of his great affaires reduced him, because three especiall matters lifted vp their heads to be seene; and by being seene, to be remembred.

The first, was the discharge of the *Zagarians*, and dismissing *Philano*, which hee royally performed with a Princely ouerplus, confirming the League, and wishing, if the *Persians* and *Medians* did not agree, to hearken after *Roxana*: but when *Trezoboro* came to take his leaue of his Friend, it exceeded a Passion, and the louely *Philano* truly deciphered the force of Affection: So deuiding a Ring betweene them, because subiect to aduentures, they might be sure not to be vnknowne, they parted in body, but the loue of their hearts ended not in death. The Ring was artificially wrought, and enclosed with an enameled Scalloppe made of a Stone taken from the eyes of a *Panther*; but deuided, was not to be matched without the other: both parts had impression with their owne bloods from this counterchangeable Mott; *Nonalind admittit.*

The second proceeded from his care to *Artabanus*, to whom hee had engaged himselfe, especi-

ally about the redaction of both the Kingdomes to one *Monarchy*: But this was happily without further trouble determined; for not three dayes before *Philano* departed, the Embassadors of *Media* and *Persia* arriued, and after the ceremonie of gratification from all estates was ended, they shewed him a Commission contayning foure principall poynts. First they tyed themselues to yeerely Tribute, as acknowledging him the life, by which their pollitical bodyes did moue in peace: The second exposed a perpetuetie of Alleageance: for Loue and Dutie was but a slender counterpoise to Life and Honour, which hee had so often aduenured for their sakes: The third concerned the Mariage of *Roxana* with *Darius Artabanns* Sonne: The last entreated for *Cleonidas*, whom destruction had miraculously spared, & his owne penitency much bettered: To these he breifly made answere, the Tribute he did disclaime, as foreseeing such a Challenge might either grow to intrusion, or moue their denial, so heere after debate be the destruction of one another. Their loue and frendshippe he much relyed vpon: The Maryage of *Roxana* he anulled, dilating besides the hapinesse depending: but concerning *Cleonidas Anzitemus*, interceded, as reselued the differences betweene them, were not so slightly to be ouerpassed,

The third and especiall matter of importance consisted of many diffused partes, and therefore

inter-

intermixed the more trouble to vniforme it: and this was, how to reconcile *Trezobore* to his father, considering the inconueniences proiected from the prophesie: First the *Emperors* goodwill hung in suspence, for he that feared before they were borne, could not but tremble now they were men; and of abillitie to defend themselues: Then the returne of *Kalucky* was doubtfull vpon the notice of the deceite: Thirdly the discussing of the Oracle finding part true in the Maryage of *Brizaca* must needes hasten displeasure: Next the mislike of *Opacus*, because his daughters had so presumed, would sturre vp some troubles: Last of all the iealosie of himselfe, as the Principll cause of mischeife: For commonly men feare most the blow, that commeth last, and the Oracle concluded, that *Mengrelius* must be slaine by his daughters Husband.

Bertosus is sent Embassador to the Emperor Mengrelius and discouereth the story of Trezobore.

THese particulars were orderly debated: at last his loue to his Queene and *Trezobore* preuayled, eyther to make a peaceable attonement, or compulsiue entrance into *Trebizonda*: for which purpose *Bertosus* was sent Embassadour from the *Armenian* King to the Emperour *Mengrelius*, to whom the report of *Anxitemus* recouery seemed so strange, that his feare of hee knew not what, presaged mischiefe to follow: yet remembring the Prerogatiue of Kings; and that *Bertosus* desired

desired audience, hee appoynted a day of hearing; and for the better countenancing his Maiestie, summoned all the Princes and Nobilitie of his Empire; the chiefe was the Empresse *Ballutasa*: then followed *Opacus* of *Capadocia*: *Curatsax of Iberia*: *Phorcanus of pontus*, *Schidrothemis of Synopis*, *Rhemus of Paphlagonia*: and *Mithridates of Taurica* all Kings, confederats. and Tributaries: amongst his naturall subiects *Carembetlo Duke* of *Rayanda* supposed the fauorit of the widdow *Empresse*, *Rutrasso*, *Hardubax*, *Marquidan*, *Theoricus* and *Deiphoebus*, were principall: diuers others of great worth and Nobillytie added to the state by their presence: as for his Sister *Pisana* she was long since inuested with the Royalties of *Russia*, whereby a Crosse-mariage encreased many. Friendes resembling a Sheafe of Arrowes, which bound togeather are not to be broken; but dis-ioyned, are subiect to a slender furie.

When *Bertosus* perceiued the Emperour determined to set foorth the ampliation of his glory; and that this stately shew was of purpose to make apparant his greatnesse, hee not much misliyked the same, though it tended to cause him to vse the more reuerence, whereupon after the ceremony ended, and that their expectation had wrought a still silence, he layed open the recordes of admiration, and red thus distinctlie before them all:

Subiects (mighty *Emperor*) entring into great and impor-

important actions are to consider, whether they be commodious to the Common-wealth, Honorable to themselues, easie, or at least not difficult to be effected, and respectious for whom, or against whom they deale: but *Princes*, or *Princes* Embassadours by all constitutions, are licensed to deliuer their Message freely, and to be answered or dispatched honourably. This I am mooued to inferre, because of the strangenesse, wherewith you must be acquainted; yet such may be my fortune, that I shall rather seeme a trusty *Mercury* from Heauen, then a tedious Herrold on Earth: But how soeuer, this is the will of the Gods, and the pleasure of the *Armenian* Kinge.

Although the first inconuenience in the Oath to *Kalucki* hath produced strange alterations, and in a manner sequestred you from the happinesse incident to other *Princes*, but quite debarred these from the comfort of a naturall Successor: yet if you can be thankefull to supernaturall Power, and louing to your selfe in the receipt, I offer you a rich and inestimable Present. To be more plaine, I bring you glad tydings of a Sonne; and to these of a true *Prince*, yea such a *Prince*, that you may presume on Deuine bountie, and Worldly felicitie, considering his preseruation, and perfection. With that hee vnfolded the wrapped vp secret of *Trezoboros* and *Brizacas* infancie, his owne troubles in their bringing vp, the theft of *Cleonides*, their Shipwracke at Sea, the aduenture of *An-*

"Zitemus, the Mariage of *Brizaca*, and the now set-
"led greatneſſe of *Armenia*, where the heroijcke
"*Trezoboro* expecteth the loue of a Father, and is
"ready to performe the duty of a Sonne.

But ere *Bertoſus* had fully concluded, ſuch was the exceſſiue ioy of the Court, and the ioy exceeding all ioyes of *Arcabella*, that *Mengrelius* was quite diſappointed, and in a manner compelled to the ſame paſſion, leaſt he ſhould ſeeme a contrary, amongſt ſo many pleaſures: wherupon he rewarded *Bertoſus* according to his eſtate, and confirmed the priuiledge of his place: yet loth to detaine him longer, then was conuenient for feare the people might immagin him Ielious of the newes, he tooke order for his diſpatch, and appoynted *Mithridates Prince* of *Taurica* to accompany him to *Armenia*, & attend on *Trezoboro* to *Trebizonda*: but neither *Arcabella* nor *Ballutaſa* could ſo ſlightly diſmiſſe him, the one like a true Mother aſking diuers queſtions touching her Children, wherin ſhe was much ſatisfied, yet beginning againe and againe aſked many things worthy of ſelution: the other like a gallant *Princes* ſeemed to glory in the action, and becauſe ſucceſſe anſwered her expectation, was very proud to be author of ſo Famous a deed, nor left ſhe to enquire of the manner of the deliuerie, when *Gellida* and *Perinthum* caryed them into *Capadocia*, for which ſeruice ſhe had contriued to Crowne the eldeſt *Queene* of *Phrigia*, and to match the other to *Omphalus* King of *Lidia*: but

the

the desier to see the *Princes* hastneth *Bertosus* returne, who comming to the *Empresses* tooke his leaue with gladnesse &, was glad to leaue them in such a taking: but parting with the *Emperor*, it seemed rather a farrewell of necessitie, then delight, the manner whereof at his returne he imparted to *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus*,

In this sort receiued his iorny a limitation, and the faithfull dispatch thereof moued *Anzitemus* to remember, that vertue meriteth a recompence, and Honor florisheth with the countenance of the Prince, wherfore he determined to aduance both *Bertosus* and *Coranus*: had not *Trezoboro* entreated him not to entercept his good meaning toward them, considering they were subiects of a nother kingdome, and how much they were endeered to him: so that *Placandus* at this time Triumphed alone, and was inuested with the Royalties of the *Dukdom* of *Tauraſim*, the collebration whereof put *Trezoboro* in minde of his iorny, and *Mithridates* vrged it the rather, because *Brizaca* cheared her selfe with the Societie of her owne Ladies, whom *Arcabella* had very considerately sent vnto her and seemed reposed in the fulnesse of Princely greatnesse and happynesse, had not the very name of a Father & Mother imposed a taske, one desire to see and know them.

Placandus made Duke by Anzitemus.

THus was she left to the fruition of her ratefied mightinesse, and the *Prince* setteth forward

Trezobore returneth to Trebizonda and is entertained for Prince.

toward *Trebizonda*, but vnderstanding the Court was kept in *Samarchanda*, a rich and populous Cittie, hee studied how to make his entrance, least *Mongrelius* might except against an ambitious beginning, or vaine popularitie: yet the more hee meditated, the more intricate were his owne conceites: For neuer till this apprehending the incombrances, wherewith *Princes* were intangled, hee now perceiued the difference betwixt a great and a meane estate: At last, as it were playing his Fathers Sceane, hee would needes enucleate the Prophecy; but a very bitter taste followed, and it represented a Toyle, from which a man striuing to escape, tyed himselfe the faster therein. For no hope remayned, but in discrediting the latter part, considering his miraculous preseruing, and Sisters Mariage had giuen life to the first; yet remembring time must haue his course, and all was to be committed to highest direction, hee onely framed himselfe to giue no cause of mislike, nor by any demeanour to mooue his Father to renew his thoughts of the Oracle.

As these particulars had a kind of mutinous passage, hee passed still forward, and came at last within sight of the Cittie, which indeed prepared a day of solemnitie for his welcome, and that neither durst the *Emperour* interdict, nor *Trezobore* gainesay, least he might seeme the occasion of a preposterious beginning, so that he was enforced to moderate that spirit of Maiestie, which his Heroicall disposition

position euer maintained, and saluted the companies in order as they came with a still behauiour, & when the applause of the people seemed more then a Triumph, he went forward in quietnesse, vntill the *Emperor* presented himselfe, who hastned by his wife and mother, (but especially least in there tradance the people might immagin strange matters) was now to giue and receiue the reciprocall comfort proceeding from so blessed a greeting. Heere *Trezebore* dismounted, and with obedient demeanor prostrated himselfe to *Mengrelius*, who could not but like a father, make his ioy the more appeare; & like a Prince reioice with his subiects for such a recouery: So he tooke him in his Armes with teares, and conducted him to *Arcabella* & *Ballutasa* with gladnesse, but they seemed transported to a nother world with his sight and seasure, and as when the Sunne at his going downe is taken into heauen from the sight of the earth, so was the Prince conueyed from the rest betweene them into a new glory, and sence reioycing delight, which continued in firme strength (without so much as any mans whispering the least mistrust of alteration) vntill the cause of their now goodnesse effected the troubles ensuing, by reason *Kalucki* made acquainted with this discouery, layed claime to the *Empire* and came in person to plead his right: but we must take a progresse into another Kingdome, before he be ready to come hither.

The story of Kalecki and Mullumalia.

HOwsoeuer *Historiographers* haue written of many strange Customes tending to inciuilitie amongst the *Tartarians*, in regard of the many strange Nations within so spacious a Country; yet haue they all concluded, that no people are of better obseruance toward their *Emperour*, nor *Emperour* so impetious ouer his Subiectes; by reason whereof diuers Warres and Stratagems hath made them beleeue, the Crowne was held in the hand of Victorie, to be bestowed on the prenaylet? But amongst others, the most famous chaunced betweene *Barka* and *Allau*, both Noble, valiant, beloued, and at one time nominated *Emperours*; yet by no meanes consenting to Deuision or Competition: Now because in such Conuulsions, there is no *medium*, betweene an Emperour and Traytor, either striued as well to liue, as to reigne; so that the dissention continued with great difficultie and extremitie betweene them, at such time, as *Kallucki* dispossessed in *Trebizond*, came with his complices into this Country; and politickly considering his estate, made offer of seruice in nature of a mercinarie Souldier vnto *Barka*, who superstitiously imputed his comming, as sent from Heauen to his assistance, and therfore without curiosity quartered him by himselfe & sent a Treasurer with other officers to attend him: but it was not long ere he made Tryall of his vertue in some slender Skirmishes, which with admiration

of

of diſcipline and valiant execution he performed: Then he ſent him to ſurpriſe a place entrenched, whether *Allan* had drawne his cheifeſt ſtrength, and by the ſame both kept the paſſages and him ſelfe from danger, this ſeemed a matter of difficultie, yet with diuers pioners, and by lodging neere, they were able to make a Mine (a thinge as yet vnknowne amongſt them) out of which in the dead of the night they iſſued on the enemie, and committing a notable ſlaughter, leueled the place with the ground, and ſo returned in Triumph: Laſtly, he put him in truſt with Managing the maine Battaile (for *Allan* would tryfle no longer, but appointed a day of Tryall) wherin his Fortune and vallure ioyned in League. For in that encounter, he ſlew the ſtrong reputed *Allan*, diſcomfited his forces, and ſetled *Barka* in a quiet poſſeſſion of greatneſſe, as himſelfe in a ſtrange commendation of goodneſſe, becauſe the people apprehending him the meanes, whereby their troubles ceaſed, and peace flowriſhed, performed interceſſion to the Gods for his proſperitie, and made proferre of themſelues to ſupport him in any enterpriſe of his owne.

The Empres Mullumalla in loue which Kalreki.

This was ſoone perceiued by *Mullumalla* cheife *Empres* (for their conſtomes allowed many wiues and more Concubines, & yet was the Law of adulterie ſeuerely puniſhed amongſt them) who long ſince found her ſelfe ſurpriſed with his loue, and hunted after euery opportunitie to diſcouer her affection, which (hauing receiued impreſſion from

the

the report of so many, who seemed to dote on his worth, & was after strengthned with her one opinion & iudgment from his presence & vertues) grew to a kind of vehemencie, and that hindred by many reasons, and further incombrances, encreased to impatience, because she thought there was yet meanes to do her selfe good, & he being a stranger would to be glad to be the fauorit of an *Empres*. But as she went forward in this path of incontinency, successe not alwayes respectious to vertuons proceedinges attended without her owne seeking and prenidice, as arising from the *Emperors* iniustice vpon this occation.

No sooner had the vertue of *Kalucki* shewed her excellencie, and the people more and more had him in estimation, whereby the new established *Burke* was to determine something for his recompence and aduancement, but a certaine iealowsie of his insinuating into the fauor of the kingdome, and misconstruing his royall birth and right to *Trebizond*, which all sortes began already to pitie, and so to fauor, slacked his loue toward him, & weakned the strength of his willingnesse to aduance him, nor leaft his conceite so: but a further peeuishnesse whispered, that he sought to rob him of his subiects hearts: now when strange humours were entertained, strange distemperatures followed, in so much that he one while resolued quite to dismisse him, as hauing no further occation to imploy him, but that he thought was too inhumaine, and

his

his Subiectes would neuer condiſcend, vnleſſe it were to recouer his Empire: Another-while hee ſtudied to proportion him ſome remote corner to inhabit in: but heere hee miſtruſted, it would be reputed a diſgrace, as proceeding from a weariſomneſſe of his Company, and then the opportunitie to thinke it a diſgrace, might cauſe him to reuenge it, as if it were a diſgrace indeed. Anon hee imagined to ſend him further, vnder colour of an honourable atchieuement againſt *India*; but ſuſpecting the increaſe of his Renowne in ſucceſſe, he happned by the way on another doubt, a reuolt by the ſame Armie committed to his charge. Thus did the vncertaintie of the beſt courſe, inhibit the certaintie of any courſe, till at laſt the very feare of Alteration, encreaſed euery Conceit to preuent the feare: and when no meanes of contentment without his abſence appeared, hee depended on this, by ſome courſe or other to make him away: as for his Followers, the head beeing cut off, the reſt of the members would quickly periſh: Yet lay hee awhile in waite to intrappe him in ſome bayrous mulct or other; but fayling: hee concluded by ſecret callenture, or other diueliſh impoſture to finiſh his tragedy.

Barka determineth to murder Kalucki.

This was neither hid with ſo cloſe a veyle, but *Kalucki* perceiued the *Emperours* incongruent behauiour toward him; nor debated with ſuch truſt, but *Mallumalla* foreſaw the miſchiefe, which ſhee not much repined againſt, becauſe ſhee

had so good a ground to worke vpon, and so might raise her ambition, satisfie her loue, and suffulciate her glory: yea though the life of the *Emperor* payed for it, and although her owne spirit would questionlesse haue ripened conceit to satisfie her desires (for what cannot; nay what will not, a woman, a Prince, and in loue, effect:) yet Fortune added winges to her intention, and now helped to rowle the stone, which at last tombled *Barka* out of the world: For as the *Emperor* vnder Coulor of fauour would needes carry *Kalucki* to the Pallace of Concubines, but of purpose to make their beauties a baite to allure him, & so by enfringing the seuere edict in that kinde, to haue cause of accusation against him: the *Empresse* tooke occation of passage by the walke, through which *Kalucki* must returne to the Court, and perceiuing he had been left alone amongst them to make tryall of his abillytie in resisting the temptation, she somwhat cunningly asked those about her, who it was, that presumed so to come within the Limitts of these places sacred, and prohibyted; and from whence he had now brought him selfe? Answer was made, it was the Prince *Kalucki* whom the *Emperor* licensed to view the other Pallace: that will I know sayth she from himselfe, call him therefore hether, least his ignorance by being a stranger breed further errour: But when *Kalucki* perceiued, it was the *Empresse*, his inward motions were at variance, and the very bloud of his

vaines

vaines seemed troubled, like as Wine riseth into bubles, when a lumpe of Sugar is throne into the Glasse, or is sturred with a greater strength: yet come he must, and fall downe he must, and rise againe he must, & answer many questions he must, as how the *Emperor* pleased to grace him? how he liked the Ladyes, and their attiyre? whether he knew the fault of his being there? and many other to the same purpose: all which he answered like himselfe a man, a Prince, and vnmoued with nouelties. At last seeing the prerogatiue and custome had taught her attendants to stand so remote, that they were out of hearing, she left thinges impertinent to giue him notice, there was some good toward him, and preparing his attention, vsed these speeches.

Before I enter (thou honorable *Stranger*) into the channell of my Discourse, let mee giue thee notice of the Countries wherein wee liue, and the Customes wee obserue. The first mighty, large, rude, vncitied, and in many places deformed: yet somewhat capable of Discipline, and assured Friendes to Vallour: The latter, not greatly Religious, nor carued away with the nicetie of Vertue, seldome maintayning Iustice: For the stronger Arme suppresseth a weake; and hating, or at least neglecting any Stranger whatsoeuer, onely yourselfe may boast of great happinesse in the loue of the people, and opinion of the better sort, (though I must confesse farre short of your desert) and

"presume on exceeding ſpecialitie neuer affoorded
"any other, but withall, as you ſee a Fire of filthy
"weedes to giue a glorious light, but to leaue a
"long time after a moſt odious ſtincke: So hath this
"applauſe caried a pleaſant ſhew toward you; But
"no leſſe then your life muſt anſwer the diſplea-
"ſure arysing from the ſame: For the *Emperour* in-
"toxicated with a violent ſuſpition againſt you,
"trembleth at the feare, and hath concluded alrea-
"die your death; What reſteth now, but preuenti-
"on? That cannot be wrought but by my meanes:
"nor can I proceed, but by your conſent, and re-
"ſpect of ſuch a friend, as muſt and will ſaue your
"life. Be not therefore curious of my miſlike to
"*Barka*, breach of Vowes, affection to your ſelfe,
"and ſuch petty queſtions. But ſuppoſe after ap-
"prooued goodneſſe, I ſhame to ſee thee ſubiect to
"apparant inhumanitie; now reſteth in thy choyce
"either life or death. To this, a hundred ſeuerall
Mullumalla contriueth to ſaue Kaacki. paſſages are open: To that, onely one Dore is vnlocked, and looketh both to life and Maieſtie. To be plaine; either the *Emperour* muſt yeeld to the ſummons of a haſty Death, or thy ſelfe to the arreſt of a violent Execution. If then with vnderſtanding this abruptneſſe, thou canſt remember thy ſelfe; and by thy ſelfe, the danger to be acquainted with the affaires of *Princes*; and by that danger, to contriue the contrary ſafetie; and by that ſafetie, to reioyce with her, that determineth all honour vnto thee, I am ſatisfied: and hope in

con-

conceiuing mee a right, neither is your Courage, nor Wisedome so rebated, but you can put a difference betwixt a happy life, and miserable death.

This sodaine breuitie, but full of substaunce, and so well graced with a maiestical Spirit, brought with it her accustomed companion Amazement: yet because there was nothing heere inferred (except the loue of the *Empresse*) which hee before suspected not, his Answere seemed the redier; and with addition of extraordinarie demeanour, strengthened her liking the rather toward him. For when he saw that counterpleading would rather shew a Demissnes, then Conscience; and that all good courses were vnprofitable with vntractable people, hee graciously submitted to her behests, not without protestation, that her Beautie and magnificense, had attracted his regard more, then desire of any Greatnesse: So that hee rested like Wax moulded with her warme hand, ready for what impression it pleased her to bestow: onely hee impetrated, that if it were possible, hee might be exempted in the bloody attempt; because hee would not pollute his hands with a *Princes* massacre. This shee tooke as an excellent part of Generositie: So that as much inflamed with his Vertues, as Person, shee dismissed him to his owne care, and setled her selfe to the strange course of the *Emperours* death; which ledde her vp by easier staires, then she could imagine.

For the *Emperor* fully resolued to his murder compacted with *Chamus*, *Ilion*, *Iodda* and *Tarachim* to be the executioners: but *Tarachim* either a secret instrument of the *Empresse*, or taking remorse to see iniustice rebell against vertue or pollytickly forecasting for his owne priuate, as perceiuing to what end her desires tended: once againe discouered the substance and circumstance of the cause to *Mullamalla*, and that he wanted nothing but a time to put it in practise. And hath "he no body (saith she) to make the slaue of wicked- "nesse, but a man endeered to vs for his Nobilly- "tie of blood, and euer till now the seruant of Ho- "nour and vertue? Beleeue me I thinke you are be- "witched so strangly to be drawne into your owne "ruines, for what trust can he repose in you, that can "be hired with Mony to doe mischeife: without "question it is but a plot of tryall against your selues, "who will euer make account of the Murderers of a "Prince; yea such a Prince, to whom the kingdome "must yeeld the Tribute of your peace: but if there "were possibillytie to beleeue, that any many durst "immagin such a thought: by the silence of the "night I sweare, were he not my *Emperor*, I iudge "him worthy of death in his base submission to such "villany, therefore Honorable *Tarachim* deceiue "not thy selfe in *Barkus* meaning, nor be againe de- "ceiued, though he meane as thou sayest, For then "can it proue no otherwise then absolute tirany, and "to free the Common wealth of a Tyrant is indeed

an action of renowne: This she spake to put his disposition to the touch, and finding him willing to be diuerted, she then strengthned him in that resolution: this made him more flexible toward her, and that perswaded a wondefull contrarietie, ringing in the lelosie of his owne life, so the feare to preuent it submitted to her directions: againe, she with a doubtfull manner of speech, that if he had sayd the truth it were better a wicked *Emperor* miscaried, then men of vertue and good deseruing: and last of all with reasons, promises, and protestations to make the fact iustifiable, tooke his oth to kill the *Emperor*: Which he very opportunely performed in a walke adioyning to the Pallace, as conferring togeather in secret about *Kalucki*, and no sooner shruncke the bleeding Carkase to the ground, but he wounded himselfe in many places with the *Emperors Semiter*, quight conueying away the instrument of death, and so stood crying for helpe in a pittifull manner. *The murder of Barka.*

By this time hath the strange reporte of the *Emperors* murder possessed both Court, and Country with amase, and the murtherer without any pursuite quickly submitted himselfe: but brought before the *Empresse* & the rest to whom such a cause pertained, he confessed the fact: yet desiered that he might take away the shame, though not the fault in the misfortune, by discouering the secrete as it chanced, now because his bleeding woundes induced commiseration, and that his present state made

shew

" shew of violence against him, it was thought con-
" uenient to heare him, and if it were, but to bolt out
" the rest of the conspirators. Most deuine *Empresse*
" (quoth he) & Honorable vpholders of this mightie
" state, I intend neither to entreat for fauour nor life,
" (for in the very misfortune of the mischeife, I am
" worthy to dye) yet giue me leaue to extenuate
" your displeasures against me, and to disclaime ei-
" ther a naturall disposition to such impietie, or now
" willingnesse to lay violent handes on such a per-
" son: wherein that my true simplicitie may some-
" what countenance me, and that I plead for my
" Honour and renowne, giue me leaue to launce
" my Barcke into this Channell. Who doth not re-
" member the misery of our Country through the
" ambition of our Emperours *Barka* and *Allau*,
" deceassed? Who doth not acknowledge the bles-
" sings conferred vnto vs by the Prince, *Kalucki*,
" who with all vertuous industries hath proceeded
" for our good? yet (mighty *Peeres*) I shame to
" tell it, without respect of worth, royaltie, honour,
" or the benefite it selfe, some wretched Ielousie so
" misled our *Emperour*, that very ingratefully (if
" I make not too great offence in the tearme) hee
" contriued many wayes his destruction, miscon-
" struing our Loues, and his Vallour, to tend to an
" aspiring reach: and when nothing appeared to ap-
" pease his misdoubts, hee flatly concluded to mur-
" der him secretly: To which bestiallity, hee sug-
" gested *Chamus*, *Ilios*, *Iodda*, and my selfe, ouer-

reaching

reaching our Obedience with Imperious will, and inforcering our frayltу with Reward and Preferment. Now whatеuer good or bad Angell was ouer this diſmall night predominant, I know not; but ſending for mee into the Walke, hee conferred about the Murder; and becauſe my ſlackneſſe ſeemed rather enclined to remorce, then diſpatch of the tyranous decree, all impatient hee flew vpon mee, wounding mee in this manner, neuer repreſſing his furie, till I loſt the vſe of reſpect and conſideration: then life ſtraue with neceſſitie, and compelled her ſeruant ſtrength to the cloze, hoping onely to ſaue it ſelfe; wherein, howſoeuer it chanced, the Sword in the fall, ſtrooke him to the heart: which how grieuous it is vnto mee, the immortall powers, that haue deliuered *Kalucki*, and preſerued all your glories, can witneſſe.

This vnlookt-for contrarietie, made them all amazed, yet when the examination of the reſt, and other circumſtances agreed with the truth, moſt ſtrange was the confuſion amongſt them: For the people with great acclamations cryed out, Liue *Kalucki*, liue *Tarachim*. The *Empreſſe* tooke heauily her Huſbands misfortune; but ſeemed more troubled with his infamy. The *Princes* of the State knew not what to ſay, or how to proceede. The people they continued with zeale towarde *Kalucki*, and in a manner proteſted *Mallumella* could not doe better, then make him ſatisfaction by marage. Fleete Wiſedome played a kinde part

For though her Desire burned within her to the same purpose, yet a still modesty kept her from making shew of any such motion: and when the greatest Lords (as not knowing how to suppresse it, being a matter of that consequence, & the party a man of that high deseruing) vrged it againe. Shee sayd it was a time of sorrow, and the loue toward them, would not consent to any thing vnbefitting: But when indeed another and another time was spent in yeelding reasons of the likelihood of happinesse; and that her cunning had drawen them to beleeue their importunities should preuaile with her, shee welcommed the fortune, that had thus smiled vpon her, and tooke *Kalucki* into the tuition of her loue; which quickly inuested him *Emperour*, and sware the Subiects to loyalty and obedience.

Kalucki Emperour of Tartary.

Now was hee to play the part of an Emperour, and by reason of the naturall rudenesse of the Country, and inciuility of the people; the one to be refined, the other reduced, the greater was his need of those excellent ornaments of Kings: but being himselfe a naturalist of Maiesty, hee soone put in practise Magnanimitie for his State and Court; Wisedome for the common causes, and (extracted from her) Pollicy to keepe the great men in obedience, Affability (as farre as their Customes permitted) to obtaine fauour, where it hung in suspence; and Iustice to strengthen the loue got by meere good hap. Besides, hee know

how

how *Mullumalla* had proceeded, and therefore was shee to be regarded with extraordinary behauiour: But heere was no place for Mistrust or Iealousie, because shee prooued an admirable Wife and Mother of many Children; and the people continued in their loue, as hauing no cause to mislike.

Kalucki enformed, how his brother had broken promise and couenant with him, determineth to be reuenged.

BVt as he went forward in this towardly fortune to felicitie, fame that euer scorned to be pend in a Corner came to tell him, the Emperour *Mengrelious* had infringed the couenants ratified, and a Prince liued in scorne of his composition, which somewhat distempred him, as forseeing the troubles impending, or shame to let his Honour be abused: but when *Scaroxus* the brother of *Queridock*, whom *Mengrelius* had dispossessed of the Royalties of *Sinopis* by placing *Scydrothemis* King, had in person vrged other particulars: then was *Mullumalla* made acquainted with the story from the beginning, and she (though desier could haue pleaded, that no satisfaction was answerable to his company) yet stomached the indignity, and in her Heroick spirit concluded, his renowne hung in suspence without reuenge: Now rested the doubt, what course to take? And therein many times and much debating shewd as well the duetie of a wife, as Honour of a Prince: at last she willed him by sommoning

Calucki certefied his brother had a sonne.

the Estates of the *Empire* to make tryall of their affection; (which hee performed, because it pleased; and it pleased, because shee wished: and shee wished, because he was so great a person and greatly beloued) to whom after the Ceremonies of the assembly were ended, he deliuered these speaches.

Although (louing and worthy to be beloued *Lords* and *Subiects*) the deuine prouidence and your fauours hath collated this *Empire* without desert or my owne first seeking: yet must I not now either degenerate from that I am, or appeare other, then I should be, least you may immagin former baseneſſe, or present demisneſſe: but because matters of Armes and martiall exploites are intended (and as may be obiected rather for my priuate satisfaction, then your generall good) I determined to acquaint you with the story from the beginning, and so fell into the addition of many circumstances, with this last newes of *Scaroxus*, which they neuer heard of; Now, if you thinke it meete, that so great a commander ouer so many valiant people, and such spatious Countries should digeſt a defamation, which pettie *Princes* would aduenture to reuenge, I must submit, and for your sakes, or peace will make the Warre of a distempred conscience: But if my calamitous discourse hath wrought any impression, whereby with your loues and assistance I may proceed, then doe I expostulate your constancie, and account my selfe more happy, then Fortunate: for if you haue

rightly

rightly vnderſtood me, my meaning is not to lead " you to deſtruction, or driue you like a Tyrant to " a ſlaughter houſe: but I expoſe vnto you the re- " couery, Cities, Poſſeſſions, Riches, and what " men can deſier, of a large and fertile Countrie " to which without doubt the Gods will conſent, " ſo your abaſhed drawing backe be not ſignes of " ill ſucceſſe. "

When it ſeemed he determined ſilence, the company rather wondring at his perfections, then miſunderſtanding his ſpeeches, gaue a great Plaudite, crying, the Gods preſerue *Kalucki*; the Gods protect our Emperor; and with vnfainednesſe offered themſelues and goods freely to the enterpriſe: this made him feaſt them all ſumptuouſly by way of gratification, and that brought them to care and reuerence toward him the eaſier: to a Councell of Warre diſputed the matter, and diſperſed the ſeuerall Commanders to rayſe vp Forces to make his Armie the greater: For though hee had euer in readineſſe a hundred thouſand in Armes, beſides his owne Companies brought with him from *Trebizond*, and now foure-ſcore Thouſand ſeruing for a Guard to his perſon; yet were his Foure principall Kingdomes; that is to ſay, *Ieckemongall*, *Sumongall*, *Merchat*, and *Mitrit*, alſeſſed at Fourtie thouſand a peece, muſtred and orderly trayned (in reſpect of their former diſorder) at *Corella*, where the Rendeuous was appoynted.

Malucki returneth to challenge the Empire of Trezibonda.

THus with a mightie Armie he marched along, leauing *Mullumalla* Regent in his absence, who the morning of his departure had sacrifised two whight Hartes to *Diana*, and by their forward going to the Alter, presaged good successe, and his returne: and having framed an Imperiall Diadem set on many degrees, and beautified with inestimable Pretious stones, which were supported in euery barre with her owne proporture (a thing questionlesse both for worth and workmanshippe of admiration) he Crowned him therewith in the sight of the Armie, and so with a Warlike ceremony committed him to the tuition of the Sunne: Thus is he come to the confines of *Albania*, and there rested himselfe, studying which way to proceed in the best course, and at last creating *Queridack* Prince of his Emperiall tent, made him an Embassador to *Mengrelia*, with these instructions: That whereas he had been dispossessed of the Empire of *Trebizonda* by wrong and despight, and was contented to embace him selfe to strange conditions to auoyde effusion of blood: they had yet to adde to his indignytie scorned him, and infringed the Lawes both of Honor and nations: that seeing this contempt was intollerable, & the Couenants enioyned him to lay claime to his right, he came in person with an Armie of three hundred Thousand well appoynted Soldiers to performe the same, that if it seemed good

to

to the Emperials to admitte him to quiet posses-sion, considering it was but a smale satisfaction of his first wronges, no worthy man should be displaced, and he would desist from the way of conquest: That if they impugned his desires, then to denounce open hostilly, and giue them warning, the businesse was remediless, and he merciless.

This Embasie did *Queridocke* deliuer with a gallant spirit and grace, not without inti-mation of iniustice concerning him selfe, and diuers others banished their naturall Countrey, which in a manner distracted the hearers, by rea-son they could not denie what he sayd, nor durst accord to what hee importuned, and had not their present peace, but especially the vndoubted to-wardlinesse of the Heroijck, *Trezobore* suggested infinite miseries, and wretchednesse in the best change, without doubt there would haue followed a most terrible confusion.

But now is *Mengrelius* perplexed many wayes with the arrogant Message, the opinion of his Sub-iects, the remembrance of his first wrong, the trou-ble of the Warres, the errours of his Mother and Wife, the alteration of the State, the displeasure a-gainst *Opacus* for his Daughters sauing his Chil-dren, the duty of a Father now they were preser-ued, and the feare of the Prophecy, which indeed dogged him at the heeles, and followed him like a shadow: So that no way of safety appeared, but

in

in his Sonnes destruction; which as hee supposed, would both satisfie *Kalackies* claime, and settle his owne iealosie, yet loth to discouer his feares in publike, or enterpose such a mischeife in the times of rumors and occations of Warre: he went more cunningly to worke, and vnder Colour of the common good thus spake to the estates of the *Empire*, which he had assembled at *Samarchanda*.

So great is the mischeife threatned against vs (most happy people, but in my vnhappines) that I feare to know, how to preuent it: because on the one side my fatherly affection and your loues, must and will disclaime any strange courses against my sonne, on the other side, my dignitie importuneth a Princely connexion of Soueraingtie, and nature it selfe Countermandeth the Traytorous composition, which I am sute begun in Iniustice, and you may obiect will end in destruction: but because my Country & people are in a degree before my Children: yea my owne life and least the common wealth should complaine for vexing her with these intollerable wronges: if there may be reason in this vnreasonablenesse: I abiure the name of a Father, and offer my sonne as a Sacrifice of attonement: I renounce the Royaltie, which now seemeth like a glorious Sunne; and submitte for your satisfaction: I cast downe my life to be put into the other Ballance against your affection: For neither *Sherefeldin*, nor *Ferabrase* shall be themselues to make you worse, then your-

selues.

ſelues, yet be not too ſodden in cenſuring me care-
leſſe of him, whom you ſee the heauens haue cared
for; nor too ſubmiſſe concerning my owne Honor
which I haue ſo charylie preſerued; For if you will
vouchſafe to ioyne with me, all helpes of pollecy
and courage ſhall be vnited, that the body and
communitie of this Empire remaine vndiſſolued,
and before I ſubmit to any diuiſion of Titles, which
now your reſpects haue conferred, the world ſhall
tremble at the report of theſe ſtratagemmes, and
death giue a plaudite to my laſt Tragicall act, but
once againe like a loujng mother, which is ſtill
taking her leaue of her departing ſonne, and haue-
ing one ſpetiall matter to counſell him in, doth
often and very often remember it: ſo like the
Father of the Common-wealth, doe I put you
in minde, while it is time, to thinke vpon the hor-
rible end of this tryall: For to affright vs the
more, we are to contend with Beaſtes, and men
worſe then Beaſtes, *Anthropophagi*, *Miſocali*,
Monſters in nature, and all Barbariſme, ſo that no-
thing but bloud and death, or vtter ruin of vs
all (which the Gods interdicte) muſt follow in
the preuailing: Preuent therefore, Preuent in
time your troubles heere; is *Mengrelius* began the
inconuenience, heere is *Trezobro* the cauſe of your
feare, heere is both father and ſonne the Ranſome
of your diſquiet.

But as a further vehemencie might haue vnſha-
dowed the heate of other humors, the people vn-

willing to see their Prince so distempred, and vnable to dissolue their firme rooted zeale, cryed aloud, the Gods confound the disturbers of our peace, the Gods dispose of all thinges to their pleasure: liue therefore *Mengrelius* sacred, and irremoueable: spare not to defend your kingdomes, for we will neither hassard our Princely *Trezoboro*, nor permit any disipation of our gouernment.

Mengrilius is resolued to put it to the Tryall of a battaile but is preuented by miracle.

THus is *Kaluckies* Embassage contradicted, and *Queridock* dismissed backe, which caused defiance to rumour terrible thinges, and the best dispositions were shuffled betwixt feare & hope: At last *Kalucki* vnwilling to trifell, least prouision for so great an Armie might be wanting, sent forward the greatest part of his Forces deuided into three Battailes vnder the conduct of *Sicambus*, *Mallau*, *Petrostol*, *Zami*, and *Xantippus*, all in times past of hereditary possessions in *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Colchidos*: and followed himselfe with the rest quartered in fiue partes, vnder the commaund of *Misogambus*, and *Olippo*, two of the *Empresse Mullumallas* bretheren, and *Barsangol* and *Iubar*, sonnes of *Mithra* and *Delium*, two Queenes of late the Concubines of *Barka*: In the midest was *Kalucki* himselfe sequestred in an *Emperiall* Tent, & according to the ceremonious respect of his estate, neither to bee seene nor spoken withall, but at spe-

tiall

tiall times: The ordring of this buſineſſe was not committed to ſuch a ſecretary, but the Emperour of *Trebizond* knew the manner of his proceedings: and by that time he had paſſed *Cularopa* furniſhed himſelfe reaſonable well: For from *Taurica*, the heither *Scithia*: *Ruſſia*, and *Hiperborei*, he had one hundred Thouſand *Auxiliaries*: out of *Colchidos*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Paphlagonia* he muſtered eightie Thouſand: and from the Cities of *Samarchanda*, *Trebizond*, *Merlanes*, and *Xantippi* he receiued twentie Thouſand well appointed, and of better ſpetiallitie, by reaſon they were the ſonnes of Noble men, and Cittizens glorying in theirancient freedomes: theſe he kept next his perſon, and appoynted *Curatſax*, *Pharcanos*, *Scydrothemis*, & *Mithridates* ouerſeers of his Guard, as for *Trezoboro* he ſuffered his forwardneſſe to direct the whole buſineſſe as if his hope receiued life, that ſome action or other might worke his miſcarying.

Thus is the Trumpet of defiance ready to ſound on both ſides, yet meane nor the *Trebizondians* in ſuch ſuddenneſſe to put it to the Tryall of a field, becauſe by being poſſeſſed of the ſtreites and paſſages: the enemie was ſure to leſſen his numbers, and they winn time the Father of many contrarieties: but the Circumſtances of this great Warre are referred to my booke of Battailes, I therefore ouerpaſſe them now, and only certefie you, that when *Mengrelius* perceiued he was not able

to detaine them longer from a day of terror, he tooke a Truce for ſeauen dayes, laying open the Trenches, and making the way plaine, as if he determined to entertaine ſlaughter with handſomneſſe, or let death haue a larger freedome by eaſie paſſage: So that the ſtouteſt Courage was appauled at the preperation, and had no other hope but diſmay and confuſion: yet feares are enemies to the Progres of victory, and therefore all abatements of Courage were abſented, when it came to the tryall indeed, and *Kalucki* contrary to the couſtomes of his greatneſſe, thought good to ouerlooke the partes of his Warrelike body, that if neede required, the helping a diſeaſe or fault in time, might preuent a greater miſcheife: nor deſiſted hee ſo, but Mounted on a throne of purpoſe to bee ſeene and herd, he thus tooke his farrewell.

"I intend not to vſe many wordes vnto you, as ſuſpitious of your loues and vallures: For if there were ſuch a ſlackeneſſe, it is now too late to murmure or Trifell; but becauſe my regard toward you may bee the better expreſſed, I am the bolder to ſpeake, yet doe but determine to put you in minde of your owne mindes, and knowledge: Remember then, what humour ſoeuer the enemie entertaine, we are ſuccorleſſe, and farre from home, therefore muſt vallure make your way into new poſſeſsions, or if you ſuppoſe the oſtentation of the enemie, is a glorious ſpectacle, you haue

haue Armes and Hands to vnplume them, and " bedeck your ſelues with their ſpoyles: but what is " this to your owne liues and glories, which in " a manner enforce you to ſhake off all incom- " brances of feare as for my ſelfe? (though I am " loth to degeneratte from the ancient prerogatiues " of your Emperors) yet will I be the firſt to giue " the onſet: For the cauſe being mine, mine ſhall " be the Honour or the ſhame; and yours the " ſpoyles, wherein beſides the renowne of the ex- " ployte, the pooreſt vaſſaile ſhall thinke himſelfe " well rewarded. The Country you ſee is plea- " ſing, and the bleſsinges you haue already taſted " of; goe one therefore goe on: Fortune bidds " you goe on; and Victory lookes already with " a pleaſing Conntenance. Heere a wonderfull cla- " mour ſeemed to threaten heauen with the noiſe, " by which the *Trebyzondians* had warning of their enemies ill meaning toward them: For till this they had beene awtentiue vnto *Mengrelius*, who very well knew, that a ſeaſonable encouragement with addition of the worth of the partie ſpea- king, was a veary whet-ſtone of Courage, and had wrought great effect indeed with whole Ar- mies almoſt ready to faint.

Little need I (ſayed he) debate any particulars concerning the former occaſions of yout now im- minent troubles: For your owne Loyalties and reſolutions haue put a way all feare, and continued the ſteadfaſtneſſe, which I now finde, yea hurried

" you to the Gates of danger to make demonſtration
" of your conſtancie: I am therefore ſure you will
" not now relent, what euer miſcheife is threatned,
" nor would I haue you diſcouraged, in that neither
" ſpoyles of Cities, nor ritches of a plentifull Land
" ſhall be the recompence of your charge and endea-
" uors, but rather annimated in regard you are to
" ſupport a floriſhing Common-wealth, and a Coun-
" try (thankes to the eternall Powers, beautified with
" a bleſſed plentie: If this ſeeme a ſlender enforce-
" ment, then looke on your Byrths and the places
" challenging naturall regard, your Mothers, that
" bare you, your Wiues endeered vnto you, your
" Children, that exclaime: your friends and Allies
" depending vpon you, and your ſelues, knowing
" the neceſsitie of life: as for the Enemie, I aſſure
" you, they haue not that aduantage by the number
" of men, as your ſelues by diſcipline, vallure, and
" good order: But why ſhould I ſo much as wiſper
" miſdoubts amongſt you, when neuer appeared
" more loue and dutie; and what will not loue and
" dutie effect? And the immortall Powers are ap-
" peaſed, giuing notice of in-ſcrutible ſecrets, as you
" can all witneſſe the *Haruſpices* haue promulged,
" let not vs then conſent to ſurqueedry or demiſ-
" neſſe.

As he was going on, the ſigne was giuen to the Battaile: But behold, a ſtrange interception deuided the Armies by the deſcending of a thicke and ſpatious Cloude, which ſtood as a Wale betweene them,

them: at last a sence dismaying thunder made a horrible rupture, and a strange voyce with a passable lightning cried out *Trezobero bariona: Trezobero bariona*; Whereupon the *Magy*, *Gymnesophists*, and *Haruspces* were called on both sides, who interpreted it to this sence; that there was no striuing against deuine reuolutions. For the Gods had proclaimed *Trezobero* the sonne of peace; and when *Mengrelius* vrged it was by the way of sacrifice, they repugned, as finding no blood must be shed: by this, the former terror vanished, and the Armies seemed *Metamorphised* into sober expectation, which caused the Magnificent Prince to mount himselfe like the sonne of Honour, and stepping before the maine Fronts with a seemely Trotte he paced to the *Tartarians*, desiring to present himselfe before the Emperour *Kalucki* and king of Kings, who enformed of the gallant demeanor, and presence of his *Nephew*, called the principall commaunders of his Armie, and setled in his *Emperiall* Tent with exceeding Maiestie and Pompe, admitted him audience: but when *Trezobero* tooke notice of the state, and the Emperours person, he quickly alighted and with a respectious ceremony of obeisance, entreated his fauor to giue him leaue to speake: which belike was obtained with order; For he thus began.

The battaile preuented by Miracle.

I haue not presumed (most reuerent, sacred, and vnuanquishable *Emperiour*) in any impudent manner to neglect my dutie by this Course, or desperat

contempt

" contempt to weigh with ſlightneſſe your high
" Maieſtie, or great Armie, but by deuine inſpiration
" whereof there is none, that hath not in ſome ſort
" participated: I preſent vnto you the ſtrange truth
" of my birth, life, and bringing vp, whereby ſhall
" appeare a very deſtinie to this titular happineſſe,
" or (as it may proue) incombrance; and that the
" wronges, which haue thus ſturred you to reuenge,
" were neither determined in mallice, nor meane
" now to be continued in contempt, becauſe the
" Triumphs of murder and deſtruction will then be
" lamentable: which to preuent, the Gods in their
" accouſtomed mercy haue giuen a Prodigious war-
" ning: Let vs not therefore with the Giants fight
" againſt heauen, nor reiect the bleſſed fauor, which
" now ſhineth vpon vs, as if it were to de clare the
" will of all working power, diſclaimeth effuſion
" of blood: and for my ſelfe, which am the reputed
" cauſe, you ſee I come as a ſimple Hollocauſt to re-
" deeme the liues of infinite Thouſandes: yet giue
" mee leaue (how euer it pleaſed you to ſubmitte
" at that time to vnkinde baniſhment) to exprobrate
" the vnnaturall couenants ratefied, which as it
" ſhould ſeeme the whole ſenate of heauen contra-
" dicted. With that, he diſcouered at large the *Ora-*
" *cle* at *Delphos*, the manner of his Byrth, the pietie
" of *Opacus* daughters, the theft of *Cleonidas*, the
" Shipwrack of *Bertoſus*, and the mariage of *Briza-*
" *ca*. Now ſaid he, if you thinke it conuenient to
" impeach this ſecret, heere I proſtrate my ſelfe to

the

the ſaungeſt crueltie, but if an honorable attonement might pacefie your iuſt conceiued diſpleaſure, and reward this Armie, wee offer a yeerely Tribute to thy byrth-right, a ſatisfaction for all charges, and a Million of Treaſure as a donatiue to the Soldiers: beſides, the world ſhall tremble at the vnitie of your houſes, and ages to come, reuerence the Fame of two ſuch bretheren; For you being the ſeruant of the great God, and ruler ouer all rulers, *Mengrelius* will be your ſeruant, and ſubmitte as farre, as ſuch a *Monarch* may doe to his elder Brother, and higheſt Lord.

Theſe ſpeaches iudicially deliuered (his outward countenance tempered betweene an amiable and modeſt behauiour) breathed a contentment, as if a ſoft Winde ſturring the ſweete Flowers, ſhould thereby infuſe delight to our Senſes: whereupon ſucceeded the effectes, a ſtill Deſire to be fedd with the Pleaſure: and Pitty challenging Miſchance, which ſhould hinder them from that walke. So *Trezoboro* was for a time graciouſly diſmiſſed; and a Truce of fourteene dayes gaue them entercourſe one to another: in which ſpace, the aſſembly of *Eſtates* ſate dayly to finiſh this ſtrange building of Peace: As for the Souldiers, their conceites ſtretched no farther, then to woonder at the Story, to be mooued with the miracle, to pittie *Trezoboros* youth and comlyneſſe, to wiſh an attonment on all ſides, and to returne with wealth, libertie and credit: at laſt, ſuch was the apprehenſion of their

preſent ſtate, and miracle diſpoſing their humours to contrarieties, that *Kalucki* (after *Mengrelius* conſented to readmitte thoſe *Trebizondians*, that would returne to former libertie and eſtates, or like recompence) ſent *Miſogambus* and *Olippo* with preſents of ratification, who with ſound of Trumpet in both the Armies proclaimed an inuiolate Truce: whereupon a ſtately *Coloſſeum* of braſſe was erected betweene the Armies, inſculped with the whole occurrents, as they chanced in order, to which bargaine of felicity *Ballutaſa* and *Arcabella* ſet their ſeales: the one, thanking the Gods for the aduancement of her Children: the other, ſacrificing to Fortune, that had ſo many waies encreaſed her happyneſſe. Thus doe the brothers to the great applauſe of the people, greet one another; and the ſtate of the Spectacle would make a vollume in the deſcription: but time muſt determine all thinges, and theſe great Armies be deuided: ſo *Kalucki* with treaſure, Honor, and reuerence returned to the magnanimous *Mullumalla*; to whom he made an offertory of himſelfe and ritches, and *Mengrelius* with peace, libertie, and delight, was welcomed to *Trebizond*; where proſperitie ſeemed for the time, to keepe her manſion, had not the wrathfull *Nemeſis* (who neuer leaueth wrong and iniuſtice vnpuniſhed) ſent for Ieloſie and Sulpition to attend on her in the progreſſe of viſiting *Mengrelius*, leaſt the will of the Gods ſhould prooue a mockery, and the inuitable de-

crees

crees of Destinie be not accounted of: and thus she meanes to contriue her entertainement.

The story of Mengrelius and Trezoboro: with the fathers ielosy against the sonne by reason of the propheſie.

NO sooner was the *Trebizondian* Armie dissolued, but *Trezoboro* sollemly proclaimed the Prince of peace, as well to cellebrate their late quietnesse, as to practise Martiall exployts, went about some fruites of idlenesse with gloryous shoes to the people, and many Triumphes to the Court: whereby he made way to the peoples loue to come in at, and euery mans eyes were fixed vpon his youth and comlinesse: as you see some forren Plant gracing a curious Garden, and the commers in regarding the rest to no purpose: this was despightfully pried into by some hatefull politicians, that terrefied the *Emperor* with blasoning his sonns demeanor, which might winn the hearts of the kingome from him: to these certaine old Councellers, rather stomaching to see their impatience & peremptorinesse abhorred, then daring to set a foote Broyles and discentions, added the greatnesse of the charge (considring the Treasure was much wasted with their last businesse) the disorders of idle attendants, the pride of his followers, the slenderneſse of the present Court, all which set his thoughts at randome, & some of them stumbled on the wrested interpretations of the propheſie, which *Mengrelius* (fearing most the blow, that came last) absolutely beleeued, began to draw neerer and neerer to the full effect,

and so began a strange manner of Melancholy, sequestring him selfe from conuersation; and when necessitie compelled him abroad, hee grew impatient and irrigular: but the greatest cause of his disquiet, accrewed from the suggestion of diuers, who through the credite of *Belgorundo*, made euery paltry appearance of a litle skill to carry the true countenance of Learning and Diuination, by putting in practise the *Cabalisticall* Art, *Ægyptian* Characters, *Astronomicall* Figures, *Hieroglyphicall* representations, *Augurings*, and *Pithonicall* Incantations; which with some slender likelihood were intermixed: so that the Court swarmed with a troope of diuelish *Astronomers* (a kind of people alwayes forbidden, and alwayes retained) whose strange Attire and Demeanour, gaue occasion of laughter and astonishment: the people counting them wise and extraordinary; the better sort deriding them, as buffoons and deceiuers.

With such illusions was *Mengrelius* quite caried from him selfe, and on a sodaine consented to a decree, that none (of what estate soeuer) should intermeddle with the *Emperors* retyering, nor appoynt extraordinary meetings without the verge of the Court, which was strangely taken at the first: but *Trezoboro* discouering the secret, was contented to repaire to the Pallace; which his presence quickly filled with entercourse of people, and the applause range by the *Emperors* eares; who in short time misliked it farre worse then the other, as almost by

eye-

eye-witneſſe perceiuing, he meant to inſinuate into the vulgar opinion to irrite a faction: From hence a plaine diſpleaſure aroſe by commaunding the *Prince* to depart the Court: then wrought his abſence beliefe of euery thing reported; and added withall, that the opportunitie made him ſtudy on the diſgrace, and ſo prepare the reuenge; (For indeed there wanted not thoſe, which propoſed to *Trezoboro* his Fathers cruelty at the beginning, his wretched hate now, the errours of many men about him; and that there was no reaſon he ſhould permit the indignitie: but theſe he ſuffered as Spiders in an houſe ſeruing to gather the Poyſon and Venome of the Ayre, that the reſt may be more ſweete and holſome:) till at laſt, a wretched ſurmiſe diſplaied the enſiugnes of hate againſt him; which was too true, by reaſon all his fauourites and attendants were remooued, or neglected. *Caliſthenes* a man of an high linage, and dilicat witte, which by ſome extraordinary pleaſantnes got the name of Good conceit; and yet till now made gratious with the *Empreſſe*, was checked with the tearme of *mimus* for ſlender glauncing at the *Emperors* melancholy. Another demanding but the cauſe of the *Princes* ſequeſtration, was impriſoned. A third, making a *Satiricall* Inuection againſt eſpeciall perſons, was publickly whipt. A fourth, ſaying, the *Prince* was more worthy ſubmitted to the execution of a ſeuere Iudgement: which made a great alteration; and to be plaine, ſlacked the reue-

rence and dutie euer borne toward him.

Thus remained all places full of rumours, wherein confusion spred many dispositions abroad: some saying the *Emperor* was ill directed, or worse inclined: some that the Prince was causelesly wronged: some layed the fault on priuate persons, who hauing a long time swaied the Common-wealth, feared least the quicke conceite of others would detect their ill gouernment, and therefore ment vnder publike pretences to preuent priuate mischeifes: some blamed the *Emperors* credulytie of the coosening sort of Magy: some affirmed he was quite distracted, and some dared exclaime, that fearing he knew not what, he would ruine the Common-wealth, and Butcher vp his Children, as he had done before: These speeches had diuers effects both with *Mengrelius* and *Trezobo-ro*, the father assuring it a practise of defamation, and the sonne suspecting his fathers crudtie; which was the more greeuous vnto him, because he had deserued so well: so that now to secure himselfe he was enforced to stand on his Guard, and that incited the *Emperor* to proclaime him Traitor, the seueritie of which edict deuided the kingdome, and an vnnaturall Cruell warre ensued, wherein many stratagems and Turmoyles dislocated the Pillars & stayes of the *Empier*: for *Mengrelius* with his yeeres grew wilfull, irregular, and dangerous, mistrusting his most trusty Seruants; and when any dared to request a Pacificati-

Trezobore in Armes & proclaimed Trayter.

on,

on, he would not abide it. His Mother and Wife were irkſome, and all things at home framed themſelues to the vnframing his quiet. Abroad he was ſure the Cities would regard their preſeruation to come. The diſcontented perſons would adhere to his Sonne, as well to auoyde the Lawes penall againſt them, as in hope of recompence and reward. The Noble men and Gentrie, by reaſon of former neglect, would queſtionleſſe make themſelues acceptable to the *Prince*. Some yet aduanced, would not degenerate: and others in Office or Account, for their own ſafeties would continue alleageance: with theſe, & ſuch, whom the very name of *Emperor* muſtred vp, he made an ouer-maiſtring party, and in his owne perſon performing actions beyond expectation, ſtrengthned the opinion of ſuch, as ſtood wauering betwixt duty and pitty.

But when *Trezobore* perceiued, that hee which ſtandeth onely on defence, is farre from Victorie, hee then ſhewed his Father the force of a mighty Armie; with which he held out a long time: but at laſt, was compelled to retire to *Pelagium*, a place deſigned him for his Eſtate, and conuenient for Victualing and relieuing his Armie. Hither did *Mengrelius* proſecute him, and *Trezoborus* flight ſomwhat ouerſwayed the common opinion, neuer certaine, but in vncertainties; ſo that the *Emperor* ſeemed cheared with his good proceedings, & his Sonnes tryall; whereupon ſomewhat cunningly thinking to preſſe the Enemie, while they were

yeelding

yeelding, hee proclaymed Pardon to all thoſe, which would forſake the Prince: the reſt he denounced guiltie of the Crime of *Maieſtie*: Then ſeemed he to dally with crueltie, promiſing one hundred Tallents to any would bring him in dead or a liue: and laſt of all, encountred with his forces to great aduantage, which *Trezebore* perceiuing would in time worcke him out, and that his retardance gaue libertie for a *Ruſſian* Armie to helpe his father, he diſparched a meſſenger to *Anzitemus*, and an other to *Opacus* of *Capadocia*, who by reaſon of the *Emperors* ielouſie and ſtomach againſt them, as the cauſes of his feare, were not vſed, nor ſent vnto in their late troubles, and therefore conceiuing they were neglected or deſpiſed, a diſpleaſure aroſe againſt *Mengrelius*, and this opportunitie made them the willinger to ioyne with the Prince: eſpecially *Anzitemus*, who with foure legions of old ſoldiers came in perſon to his ayde: as for *Opacus*, from *Phrigia*, *Lidia*, and his owne kingdome, he made an Armie of one hundred 20. Thouſand, and gaue the Honor of their conduct to *Delano* a man of experience, great yeeres, and well beloued; yet ſuppreſſed from aduancement, by reaſon *Cuprax* the ſonne of the Duke of *Pantalia*, ſeemed a fauorite in Courte, and would haue drawne the managing of Martiall affayres to him ſelfe, had not *Trezebore* by name entreated for *Delano*, and the Soldiers compelled out of their Country diſclaimed any other.

But

BVt when *Mengrelius* vnderstood, that *Anzitemus* was come himselfe, a sodaine trembling disproportioned his former Courage, and the Oracle (like a hellish vision appearing) mightely perplexed him, and was indeed the author of strange courses, which at last ouerturned his good successe, yet he went orderly to worke, and encountred with the *Armenians*, before they were vnited to his sonns forces, who had much a doe to make their passage by reason the Boates were not yet come from *Trezoboro*, and *Anzitemus* had commaunded, that no man should lay violent handes on the Emperor, but this interception ended with the name of a skirmish: For *Anzitemus* with *Delanos* assistance quickely passed their Armie by a Bridge made of the Boates: and helped with great Furre-trees keeping equall distance of Twentie foote, and although the water was very broad; yet industry with the conueniencie of the place for woode, layed Plankes vpon the Beames, and so in one day both Horse and foote passed ouer in a manner within sight of the Enemie: For some two mile from the Riuer they had so entrenched the passages, that *Mengrelius* supposed they ment their to haue encamped, little thinking *Delano* played the Lapwing, who cryeth farthest from his Neast: and when he seemed most busie to fortefie a place of securytie, the maine Armie marched that night vnder a Woodes side to the Riuer,

Auzitemus ioyneth with Trezoboro: killeth Mengrelius, fulfilleth the Propheſie, & inueſteth Trezoboro Emperor.

uer, and the next day put ouer, while the *Trebizondians* prepared against the Campe, which they supposed was so neere them: But being thus disappointed, they had liberty to complaine, but small meanes of reuenge, onely the *Emperour* vnited his Forces againe, and assured he was better prouided, determined to dally no longer, but put it to a triall; wherein if Fortune fayled, he was certaine to weaken the Aduersarie, and renew his owne Armie at pleasure: and so one day might afford, what another did deny.

By this time is *Anzitemus* and *Delano* welcommed by the *Prince*, who hoping by course of pacification to end the Warre, sent to *Mengrelius* by faire intreaty not to conceiue so hardly of so worthy a sonne, and they would engage their Honor, he entended nothing but fayth and dutie: this message wrought no otherwise, then if *Trezoboro* would absolutely committe himselfe to his fathers tuition without hostage or other couenant, it might be the *Emperor* would forgiue him, to this *Anzitemus* opposed, yeelding many reasons, and by a second treatie vrged the burying vnder foote of all displeasures, the remission and restoring his followers, and the confirming him Heire apparant. Heere againe *Mengrelius* disdained to be abridged of his will, or courbed by his sonne & subiects, whereupon defiance was proclaimed on all sids, and a day appoynted to entertaine destruction with solemnitie: at which time *Anzitemus* tryed another way to appease these mischeefes, by sommoning

moning the Armies to audience, and the *Emperour* to vnderstand, what must be trusted vnto. To this, the feare of the Souldiers, rather then his owne willingnesse, compelled him: and so *Anzitemus* in the front of his Armie thus deliuered his minde.

I am not ignorant (great *Emperour*, and mis-led people) that Wisedome and good Counsaile are sometimes vnseasonable, especially in a time of fury & hate amongst men of Warre, commaunded and countenanced by the Kings owne person; yet haue you no such cause either to put in armes these men, or Armed to make them butcher them selues: For though the Father fight there, the Sonne is not absent heere: though the elder Brother vnderstanding not the truth, is with *Mengrelius*, the younger attendes on *Trezoboro*: And though a Friend is enroulled with you, one of the Family is amongst vs: and were not this lamentable, though necessitie compelled it? But now to proceed with out order, ground, or reason, what scandall can be more opprobrious? What cause more detestable? All men haue written, that Violence continues not: yet haue you begun in the Cradle, and are not appeased after many yeares: and why? the *Emperour* is terrefied with an Oracle, and suspects his owne Children. Hath the Gods preserued them for this? Hath his Towardlinesse deserued this? Hath his Valloure in your late Broyles been shewed for this? Hath his Life been so often hazarded for this? Hath your Peace been wrought for this? Hath

" your Prosperitie followed for this? Yea, hath Stran-
" gers been ashamed of the Composition; and the
" mighty *Kalucki* receiued him to fauour for this?
" And will now the Common-wealth teare her
" owne Bowels? the Members seeke their owne de-
" struction by despising the Head; and the Father
" murder his owne Child? It is execrable and ab-
" hominable. But touching the Propheſie, to be-
" leeue it not, what needeth this feare? To beleeue
" it, what way of preuention? But you will say, it is
" ambiguous. I reply, Malice must not misconstrue,
" nor Wisedome be ouerruled with Suppoſes. For
" concerning the *Prince*, (by the Deuine power
" which ruleth all Princes) you can alleadge neither
" cause, reason, nor likelihood. How then haue you
" wronged your Renowne, and inforced their
" Obedience? else would they neuer consent to de-
" stroy one another, to ruine their Country, make
" hauocke of their owne increases, see & suffer mis-
" chiefe to knocke at their doores; and with the Gi-
" ants fight against Heauen: or like that vnnaturall
" Bird, deuowring them that hatcheth her; seeke to
" destroy the Successor, on whose safetie dependeth
" all their liues. Leaue off therefore for shame: leaue
" off; either yeeld a reason of your actions, or desist
" from your vnreasonablenesse? But you will an-
" swere, It is sufficient the *Emperour* commaundes.
" I doe say no; hee is but the Steward of the Gods,
" subiect to account; and ordained to forme, not dis-
" solue the Common-wealth.

But

But as a further vehemencie might haue agraui-ted the matter, the Souldiers began to repine, some demaunding whether the *Prince* rayſed the Warre, or deſired to ſaue him ſelfe? Some for what cauſe *Mengrelius* proſecuted his Sonne? Some ſtomaked to ſee inteſtine Diſſipation. Some hardly beleeued the *Prince* began Innouation, conſidering he was to expect the Kingdomes to floriſh hereafter. Some ſaid, though the *Emperor* were offended, the ſubmiſsion of a Sonne might appeaſe any Father. Some abſolutly denied to deſtroy the Prince, and the reſt liked not, a wiſe man to be caryed away with dreames or deuiſes, eſpecially when the ruine of the *Empire* muſt ſucceed: but *Mengrelius* entraged with this diuiſion exclamed only on dutie and alleageance threatning the reuolters with death, and attempting with ſtripes to terrefie diuers in the ſpeed of eſcape, but it ſmally preuailed. For the greateſt part fled a fore his face to his ſonne, which *Anzitemus* tooke the aduantage of and encountered with the reſt in ſollemne manner of hoſtillitie, ſo that a terrible fight began, and a little time ouerlooked a dangerous conflict: in which the victory was a mournfull Triumph: For it ended with the cryes and teares of *Orphanes* for their Fathers, Fathers for their Children, Brother, for Brother, one Kinſman for another and freend for freend: yea ſuch was the miſery and miſcheife of the error amongſt them, that a ſonne was found mourning ouer a Carkaſſe, whom he

had slaine, and perceiuing it his owne father after a ruthfull complaint, kild himselfe: the horror of which sight, daunted the stoutest courage, and made them all cry out vpon the cause of their troubles; which *Anzitemus* tooke hold of, and knowing the Emperor had escaped (and as he afterward learnt) to *Samarchanda* with a quiet demeanor recalled them togeather, and though the Skirmish and their owne feares had dispersed them farre off: yet handled he the matter so well, that they were contented to returne; and finding *Trezoboro* as sad for their greifes, as his owne misfortune, which by his Honorable protestations in the necessitie to saue his life, and vnwilingnesse to disquiet so good subiects, they saw apparant, in so much that vnkind teares brake off the Princely discourse: they shouted for ioy, and with a new Comicall applause sware, they would obey no other Emperor then *Trezoboro*: as for *Mengrelius* seeing his ill disposition had taught him the way to Tyranie, they sawe no reason to betray vertue, or be in subiection any longer to inhumanitie. Surely sayed *Anzitemus*, the Gods haue taken compassion vpon you, and you and we will now be one body, but of necessitie the body must haue a head, or else the Members perish, therefore we will inuest *Trezoboro* your Emperor, and he shall renew your peace and comfortes: This (as according to their owne desires) they suone consented to, and so in midst of all the Armie was he aduanced, inuested, and solemnly proclaymed

proclaymed *Emperour* of *Trebizond*, and all the Kingdomes adioyning; *Prince* of *Peace*, *Lord* of the great *Sea*, and *Seruant* to the high *Gods*. Then sange they a Himne in his honour to *Bellona*, and a Song to *Diana*. And lastly, with *Panegericall* Ceremonies, they brought him to *Mengrelius* royall Tent, which the Souldiers had reuerently preserued in the defeat. *Mengrelius deposed and Trezobero choſen Emperor.*

But when vnfortunate *Peristoll* (whom for his ill newes he commaunded to be slaine) had enformed the proceedings of the Campe, and that the Prince had taken vpon him the Diademne, neuer was impatience apter to be described: For now he raged indeed, and put in practise many actions of distemperature, as assuring him selfe the Oracle was compleat; onely the last poynt (which was his death) yeelded more terrour in the suspition, then a thousand mischiefes in full execution: Yet he lifted vp once againe the countenance of Valoure, and with his supply out of *Russia*, many Mercenaries from *Scithia* and *Europa*, and the rest, (worthy to be beloued for being true to their Maister,) hee set forward a mightier Armie then the first; which in short time confronted his Aduersaries, who were comming forward apace to take possession of the Citties: So that nothing was to be expected, but forcible and confused Prophanation both of loue and dutie; wherefore they gaue Reuengefull scope to make one day of death for all: And the Battaile began with a horrible and

impetuous

impetuous violence, wherein to see the distempred *Mengrelius* with a well graced fury whirling amongst the troupes, would haue pitried his degenerating humors, and admired his strength and valoure; but *TreZoboros* approache deuided these thoughts, who finding the *Emperour* enclosed to his great danger contrary to expectation, commaunded them to desist, and so yeelded him freedome to worke his madnesse on some other subiect. An other time *Anzitemus* chaunced where destruction indeed was comming apace, and deliuered him: which hee tooke in greater scorne, because the Souldiers cryed, See the kindnesse of *TreZoboro:* see the pietie of *AnZitemus*. But this I say caryed him to disdaine indeed; and perceiuing himselfe spared by speciall appoyntment, hee changed his Horse and Armour, comming into the Battaile vnknowne, (For by this time, neither Order nor Discipline seruied) and determined to single out his Sonne, with such a minde, as a man after a solemne Vow, which he is resolued to keepe, endeuoreth to bring to effect. But *Anzitemus* (hauing seene *Perneades* sequester him selfe from the company, with purpose to draw foorth such men as he prouided in ambush) supposed the *Emperour* had been hee, and so encountred with him before the sodaine approch might strike a feare amongst the wearied, and already fainting troopes; and after a gallant Battaile, Death rushed in with a blow, which the King with both his hands

stroke

stroke at his head, whose steely Couert not firmely setled, yeelded to the violence; shewing that nothing in the world is permanent, nor any man in life secure: so the *Emperour* sturncke vnder the burden of this misfortune, & yeelded to an honorable vntimelines: which was the more lamentable, because hee sought the destruction of his Sonne, and came to a ruthfull end by his Daughters husband.

Mengrelius slaine, and the Propheſie fulfilled.

But when *Anzitemus* had time to ouerlooke, and know it was *Mengrelius*, vnkinde remembrance confounded him with sorrow at the accident, and cursed the hand, that yet pleaded ignorance in the deed; remayning confounded, vntill the rumour and entercourse of people brought *Trezoboro* thither: at last came *Calisthenes*, *Orchanes*, *Hardubax*: at last came the rest; all more troubled with griefe, then proud of their owne quietnesse: so that the Victorie represented variety of Discomfort, rather then solemnity of a Triumph. For what with recording those many Vertues abounding in him, whereof euery one had bountifully participated, and the present spectacle so full of remorse, they sorrowed beyond measure, and *Trezoboro* was compelled to make his entrance into the *Empire* with incongruent demeanour, & had celebrated (if the State would haue permitted it) with one solemnity his fathers Exequies, and his owne Coronation. By this time, was the Oracle published abrod, & wisedome interdicted an vnmeasurable discomfort in a matter remediles, & appoynted meuitable: so to make a new account with delight, *Anzitemus* was importuned to send for *Brizaca*, least she were altogether

depriued of that benefite, (which Children receiue from the knowledge of their Parents.) This asked a litle time of deliberation: but the importunities of the *Empresses* preuailed; so the charge of the Iorney was committed to *Philtranus* Prince of *Cilicia*: As for the Army, he deuided that into two parts, sending the one by land vnder the command of *Kazopletus*; the other by Sea with *Pelorus* sonne of *Pelorus*, *Artabazes* Admirall: both to remaine vndissolued, till hee himselfe returned; in the meane while, his Mother *Euphamia* to rest *Regent* by a new Commission.

These matters had the effect of diligence and loyalty, & *Philtranus* came fortunately into *Armenia*, & informed the *Queene* of all occurrents, with the plausible directions for her progresse to *Trebizond*. Heere the intermixtion of contraries, kept her from the full entertainement of ioy; so that her Fathers *Catastrophe* extinguished the delight of her Brothers aduancement: to which an other home mischiefe was added, the returne of *Cleonidas*, who presuming on the absence of *Anzitemus*, and the Nauie vnder *Pelorus*, entred the Confines of *Armenia*, and attempted a ridiculous Innouation. But before we certifie this Aduenture, let vs see, how Fortune ouerlooked him in the danger after the Sea-fight with *Anzitemus*.

The story of Cleonidas after the Battaile with Anzitemus.

BY that time, *Cleonidas* and *Anzitemus* (through the effect of his diuelish reuenge) were deuided, and their Ships burnt and dismembred, the horrible lamentation of so many men so many wayes yeelding vp the last powers of their soules, stroke

stroke him to the heart, and (because his pestilent humour had no subiect to worke vpon) it boyld within him like a Furnace, ouerheating all the partes of his body and minde, so that he could haue been contented to haue made his owne seperation, considering a guilty Conscience laide open the records of so many faults: But euen when Death had been most beneficiall, the necessitie of Life, with the kindnesse of the impartiall element, draue the vnfitme Seate whereon he sate to another peece of a Shippe, from whence ouerburdned, hee saw fourteene cast into the Sea, as supposing it the neatest way to Heauen, through the reflexion the Heauens made in the Water: On this by great chaunce he got, and was tossed too and fro with the Billowes, as if Destruction meant to make a Game of his danger: at last after two dayes, hee was driuen on a sandie Iland not farre from the Continent of *Persia*; wherein he mused at his owne ignorance, that hauing so long time scowred all the coast of the *Hircanian* Sea, hee was yet vnacquainted with this place.

Heere a very instinct of Nature put him to his shiftes, and by striking two Flintes on certaine Reeds lying in the place, he shuffled vp a Fire; whose effects made the returne of warmth and strength, the maintainers of life: at which the inhabitants (who were onely Seruants and Officers attending on the Priestes heere liuing) wondred, who had presumed without order of Ceremony, to dishonour the place: For this was called the *Iland of Fire*, and had two Chappels therein; one dedicated to *Vulcane*, the other to the

Sanne; in which after the *Persian* manner, the *Prieſtes* were appoynted to liue, who onely had power to giue leaue to the Inhabitants to make their Fiers for neceſsities ſake; which yet was not done without preſence of a Religious man: Whereupon they apprehended *Cleonidas*, and brought him to *Sicambus* the *Archprieſt* in the ſame manner they found him: But when with an extraordinary courage in the *Sirian* language (becauſe hee was to ſpeake to a man of his profeſsion) he diſcouered him ſelfe, and that *Sicambus* vnueiled his ignorance, remembring hee had ſeene him with *Aſtiages* in *Perſia*, & by many meanes heard of his fame, he comforted him the beſt hee could; but the beſt he could, preuented not a ſtrange Sickneſſe, which with an vnkind detention kept him full two yeares retiered, and confirmed their opinion, which ſuppoſed him periſhed: in the end, the firmeneſſe of his compleat manhood, and well ſeaſoned body, ouermaiſtred the tiranny, and he recouered both in health and reformation: for after his penitency had proteſted a remorce of the action againſt *Artabazes*, and abiured his ill manner of life; the religious Father cheared him with the comfort, which followes true repentance, and by examples confirmed his willingneſſe to amendment. Vpon this, they appoynted to goe into *Perſia*, and accordingly ariued at *Suſiana* much about the time *Anziteus* fortunes were publiſhed through *Aſia*; which he rather woondred, then ſtomaked at, not doubting to make his peace and reconſiliation, which his hope ſuppoſed by *Zaleppos* meanes (when the *Perſian* Embaſſadours went to *Armenia*)

menia) to bring to passe: But their returne certified *Anzitemus* slight answere in that behalfe, and hee smothered the indignation for a time; but vnable to suppresse it, gaue Libertie at last, to burst fourth into flames of Despight, and in this manner proceeded.

Certaine summes of Mony disbursed for *Astiages*, he demaunded of the Queene *Roxana*: which awhile bred scruple and doubt, by reason of their Articles with *Anzitemus* and *Artabanus*; yet after a little debating, they were repayed with a plenary cancelling of all accounts; For being a matter chancing before this new Contract, and in her Fathers behalfe, shee thought it dishonorable to trifle him out with deuises or excuses. Many of his Souldiers setled in their Townes, which the hast of his busines permitted not to carry with him, he requested againe: This was left to their owne desires, because in this space maried, and brought vp amongst them, they would not seeme to banish them by compulsion: So the most of them louing Spoyles better then Pay, hasted to *Cleonidas*. With this Mony and this Supply, he departed to his owne *Iland*, and gathering his Friends and Confederats togeather, with fourty sayle of well appointed Ships, and fiftie Hulks for the transportation of his Army, he tooke the aduantage of the Kings absence in the *Trebizondian* Warres, and made speed for *Armenia*, landing his Forces at such time, as *Kuzhplesus* and *Pelorus* were returned from *Anzitemus*; and *Philtranus* came with directions to attende the Queene *Erisaca* to her Mother. But this they were ignorant of, and diuers vnsetled Humors, as idle per-

sons, and endangered to the Law; vpon the rumour of *Cleonidas* arriuall, to the number of fourteene thousand, made a head in nature of *Particani*, and certified, they were ready, and resolued to ioyne with him; for their hearts and discontentments, had engaged them already; as if they meant to giue this notice, that in the best Hiue there be Drones and robbers of them that labour: but as their willingnes set them forward, their forwardnes puld them backe, as disordered without a Head, and hauing had intelligence: For the vnlookt for comming of *Kazopletus* ouertooke them with that speed, that *Cleonidas* had scarce notice, before the distraction dispersed and Iustice quickly scourged them all.

Thus was this fanaticall Company discomfited, and *Cleonidas* in a manner as soone ouerthrowne: For vpon report, how Mischance had put on a double visage against him, he made a retreat to his Ships; but ere he could house his men, *Kazopletus* by land, and *Pelorus* by Sea, had so hemmed him in, that though in prooued a gallant and tedious Skirmish, full of obseruation and example; yet his Fleete was sunke and dissipated, his Companies quite defeated, and himselfe taken prisoner, and sent to *Sagarena*, where *Brizata* kept her Court; but shee vnwilling to proceed against him without direction from *Mithridates*, by the counsaile of *Euphamia*, committed him to Ward in the same place, where his Father had once besiedged the beautious *Atraceta*.

When *Cleonidas* saw himselfe thus disappoynted and captiued, and that the last Acte of his Tragedy was

in hand, to which the Gates of Shame and Death; or Death with the shame stood onely open, hee made it a matter of some repining: yet as a man of excellent Resolution, hee neither seemed much dismayed, or abated: For to complaine of Godes, or Men, of Fortune, or the World, he thought it a property of such, as desired to liue. Againe, to craue pardone, sue to Friends, and make base Submission, hee imputed to such as feared to die; so that Death appeared now like a welcome friend, if the reproch might be taken away, which made such an impression, that he protested *Anzitemas* should not triumph in his disgrace, nor vse his liuing body contumeliously: yet when there seemed want of meanes to effect this glorious Acte (as hee supposed) beeing left destitute of all prouision, hee then boyled for very rage, and was enforced to coole him selfe with a Cup of cold Water; which working a better temperature, somewhat reduced him, and then he reprehended his dulnesse, that conceiued not the infinite wayes, whereat Death might make her entrance; whereupon with circumspection (as if Desperatnesse meant to intreat her contrary aduise) hee searched about the Chamber, at last finding a rysing in the Wall, where a Flint shoued out his Corner, with a maine careere he dashed out his braines, leauing rather example of Manhod, then Conscience. *The death of Cleonidas.*

With the death of *Cleonidas*, remayned *Armenia* fully quieted, and *Brizaca* without further suspition, might prepare for her progresse; to which the industry of *Philiranus*, and the dutie of her Subiectes

added

added outward Ritches and Pompe; nor was shee behinde them for State and Maiestie: So that shee set forward to their Ioy and Amazement: from whence shee came, & to their Delight & Contentment, to whom shee went. But when *Anzitemus* vnderstood of *Cleonides* death, hee tooke the newes (as it were in ill part,) because hee thought him selfe disappoynted of a great deale of Honour in the courtes meant toward him; yet ballansing the assurance of his owne Peace and quietnes withall, hee gaue way to more seasonable desires, and seemed satisfied with the wantonnesse of the time, and the pleasure of the place, which delighted with varietie: so that if his owne importunities had not compelled his returne into *Armenia*, hee might very easily haue vsurped the felicitie of another Kingdome.

FINIS.

Scribimus indocti, doctiq; Poemata passim.

Thomas Martin his Booke.

C 11521+
59909 SL

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION